



## Aastra Business Communication Solution



### Aastra 415/430 as of R2.0 System Manual

#### Platforms supported:

Aastra 415

Aastra 430



This document contains information on the expansion stages, system capacity, installation, configuration, running and maintenance of this Aastra communication systems as well as their technical data.

It is intended for planners, installers and system managers of Aastra 400 communication systems.

---

# Content

<b>1</b>	<b>Product and Safety Information</b> . . . . .	<b>8</b>
1.1	Product information . . . . .	8
1.2	Safety information . . . . .	10
1.3	Data Protection . . . . .	11
1.4	About this System Manual . . . . .	12
1.5	About Aastra . . . . .	14
<b>2</b>	<b>System Overview</b> . . . . .	<b>15</b>
2.1	Introduction . . . . .	15
2.2	Communication server . . . . .	15
2.2.1	Installation versions . . . . .	16
2.2.2	Positioning . . . . .	17
2.3	Networking Possibilities . . . . .	17
2.4	Aastra system phones and clients . . . . .	19
2.5	Various phones and terminals . . . . .	23
2.6	Applications and application interfaces . . . . .	24
2.6.1	Aastra applications . . . . .	24
2.6.2	Application interfaces . . . . .	26
2.6.2.1	Open Interfaces Platform . . . . .	26
2.6.2.2	Message and alarm systems . . . . .	28
2.6.2.3	CTI - Computer Telephony Integration . . . . .	29
2.6.2.4	ISDN interface . . . . .	30
2.6.2.5	Configuration . . . . .	30
2.6.2.6	System monitoring . . . . .	31
2.6.2.7	Call logging . . . . .	31
2.6.2.8	Accommodation/Hotel . . . . .	31
2.6.2.9	Voice over IP . . . . .	31
2.7	Connection options . . . . .	32
<b>3</b>	<b>Expansion Stages and System Capacity</b> . . . . .	<b>33</b>
3.1	Overview . . . . .	33
3.2	Basic system . . . . .	34
3.2.1	Interfaces, display and control elements . . . . .	34
3.2.2	Power supply . . . . .	36
3.2.3	DSP Resources . . . . .	36
3.3	Expansion with cards and modules . . . . .	38
3.3.1	System modules . . . . .	38
3.3.1.1	DSP module . . . . .	38

3.3.2	Interface cards .....	45
3.3.2.1	Trunk cards .....	46
3.3.2.2	Terminal cards .....	47
3.3.2.3	Option card .....	48
3.3.3	Wiring Adapter .....	49
3.4	System capacity .....	50
3.4.1	System capacity .....	50
3.4.2	Terminals .....	52
3.4.3	Terminal and network interfaces .....	54
3.4.4	Licences .....	54
3.4.5	Power supply capacity .....	66
3.4.5.1	Supply power available for terminals .....	66
3.4.5.2	Power supply per terminal interface .....	68
<b>4</b>	<b>Installation .....</b>	<b>69</b>
4.1	System components .....	69
4.2	Fitting the communication server .....	70
4.2.1	Equipment supplied .....	70
4.2.2	Mounting options .....	70
4.2.2.1	Cable cover set for Aastra 415/430 .....	70
4.2.2.2	Rack-mounting set Aastra 415 .....	71
4.2.2.3	Aastra 430 rack-mounting set .....	71
4.2.3	Location requirement .....	71
4.2.4	Safety regulations .....	72
4.2.5	Wall mounting .....	72
4.2.5.1	Minimum distances .....	72
4.2.5.2	Drilling plan .....	74
4.2.5.3	Drilling template .....	75
4.2.5.4	Wall-mounting procedure .....	76
4.2.6	Desktop installation .....	77
4.2.7	Rack-mounting .....	77
4.2.7.1	Rack-mounting procedure .....	79
4.2.7.2	Installing the fan .....	80
4.2.7.3	Installing the cable cover .....	81
4.3	Earthing and protecting the communication server .....	82
4.3.1	Connecting the earthing wire .....	82
4.3.2	Connecting the cable screening .....	84
4.4	Powering the communication server .....	85
4.4.1	115/230 V power supply .....	85
4.4.2	Uninterruptible power supply (UPS) .....	86
4.5	Equipping the Basic System .....	86
4.5.1	Interface card .....	87

4. 5. 2	Wiring Adapter .....	88
4. 5. 3	DSP module .....	89
4. 5. 4	Component mounting rules .....	90
4. 6	Connecting the communication server .....	91
4. 6. 1	Direct connection .....	91
4. 6. 2	Indirect cabling .....	91
4. 6. 2. 1	Connection via main distribution board .....	92
4. 6. 2. 2	Connection to a universal building cable installation (UBC) .....	94
4. 7	Cabling interfaces .....	95
4. 7. 1	Port addressing .....	95
4. 7. 2	Network Interfaces .....	96
4. 7. 2. 1	Basic rate interface BRI-T .....	96
4. 7. 2. 2	Primary rate interface PRI .....	99
4. 7. 2. 3	FXO network interfaces .....	103
4. 7. 3	Terminal interfaces .....	105
4. 7. 3. 1	Terminal interfaces DSI .....	105
4. 7. 3. 2	BRI-S terminal interfaces .....	112
4. 7. 3. 3	FXS terminal interfaces .....	116
4. 7. 4	Equipment on the ODAB options card .....	122
4. 7. 4. 1	Connection of a door intercom (TFE) .....	123
4. 7. 4. 2	Control outputs and control inputs .....	126
4. 7. 5	Audio interface .....	128
4. 7. 6	Ethernet interfaces .....	129
4. 8	Installing, powering and connecting terminals .....	132
4. 8. 1	Digital system phones .....	132
4. 8. 1. 1	General information .....	132
4. 8. 1. 2	Aastra 5360/5361/5370/5380 .....	133
4. 8. 1. 3	Office 25, Office 35, and Office 45/45pro .....	135
4. 8. 1. 4	Office 10 .....	138
4. 8. 2	DECT radio units and cordless phones .....	139
4. 8. 2. 1	Installing the radio units .....	140
4. 8. 3	IP system phones .....	142
4. 8. 4	OIP applications .....	142
4. 8. 5	Aastra SIP and standard SIP phones .....	143
4. 8. 6	Mobile phones .....	143
<b>5</b>	<b>Configuration .....</b>	<b>144</b>
5. 1	AMS Configuration Tool .....	144
5. 1. 1	AMSShell .....	144
5. 1. 2	AMS manager .....	145
5. 1. 3	Auxiliary applications .....	146
5. 2	Access types .....	148

5.3	User Access Control .....	149
5.3.1	User accounts and authorization profiles .....	149
5.3.1.1	Default user account .....	149
5.3.1.2	Predefined authorization profiles .....	149
5.3.1.3	Administration rights .....	150
5.3.1.4	Interface access .....	151
5.3.2	Passwords .....	152
5.3.2.1	Default password .....	152
5.3.2.2	Password syntax .....	153
5.3.2.3	Change password .....	153
5.3.2.4	Incorrect password .....	154
5.3.2.5	Lost password .....	154
5.3.3	Access using the System Assistant on the Office 45 .....	154
5.3.4	Password-free access .....	154
5.3.5	Automatic exit from the configuration .....	155
5.3.6	Access log .....	155
5.4	Enabling remote access .....	155
5.4.1	Access enabled by local users .....	156
5.4.2	Function code for remote access .....	156
5.4.3	Function keys for remote access authorization .....	157
5.5	Data exchange between communication server and PC .....	158
5.5.1	Working offline (AMS database) .....	159
5.5.2	Working online (communication server database) .....	160
5.5.3	Import / Export Configuration data .....	163
5.6	Configuring .....	164
<b>6</b>	<b>Operation and Maintenance .....</b>	<b>168</b>
6.1	Data Maintenance .....	168
6.1.1	What data is stored where .....	168
6.1.1.1	System software .....	169
6.1.1.2	File system of the communications server .....	170
6.1.1.3	Boot software .....	170
6.1.1.4	System-specific data .....	170
6.1.2	Updating configuration data .....	171
6.2	Update Software .....	171
6.2.1	System software .....	171
6.2.1.1	AMSUpload Manager .....	172
6.2.1.2	Standard upload .....	172
6.2.1.3	Emergency Upload of the system software .....	175
6.2.2	Software of corded system phones .....	176
6.2.3	Software system Aastra DECT .....	176
6.3	Hardware update .....	178

6. 3. 1	Preparations.....	178
6. 3. 2	Licenses and EIM card .....	179
6. 3. 2. 1	Licences.....	179
6. 3. 2. 2	EIM card.....	180
6. 3. 3	Interface cards.....	180
6. 3. 3. 1	Replacing a defective interface card.....	181
6. 3. 3. 2	New card with fewer ports .....	181
6. 3. 3. 3	New card with more ports .....	182
6. 3. 3. 4	Change slot .....	182
6. 3. 4	System modules.....	183
6. 3. 4. 1	Change the DSP module .....	183
6. 3. 5	System cards .....	184
6. 3. 5. 1	Replacing the EIM card.....	184
6. 3. 6	Mainboard .....	185
6. 3. 7	Replacing system terminals .....	186
6. 3. 7. 1	Corded system phones .....	186
6. 3. 7. 2	DECT terminals .....	187
6. 4	Display and control panel.....	188
6. 4. 1	LED display.....	188
6. 4. 2	Pilot key (CTRL key) .....	190
6. 4. 3	Carrying out functions .....	190
6. 4. 4	Operating modes and display priorities.....	191
6. 4. 4. 1	Startup Mode.....	192
6. 4. 4. 2	Normal Mode.....	193
6. 4. 4. 3	Feature Mode .....	193
6. 4. 4. 4	Application Command Mode .....	194
6. 4. 4. 5	Boot Command Mode .....	196
6. 4. 4. 6	Wiring Adapter Malfunction Mode .....	197
6. 4. 4. 7	Warning Mode .....	198
6. 4. 4. 8	Boot Mode .....	198
6. 4. 4. 9	Error Mode .....	199
6. 5	Operations supervision .....	201
6. 5. 1	Event message concept.....	201
6. 5. 1. 1	Event types.....	202
6. 5. 1. 2	Event tables .....	208
6. 5. 1. 3	Signal destinations .....	209
6. 5. 2	System Event Manager SEM.....	218
6. 5. 3	Operating state and error displays.....	219
6. 5. 3. 1	System operating state .....	219
6. 5. 3. 2	System error displays .....	219
6. 5. 3. 3	Terminals.....	220

6.5.3.4	Operating state of the Aastra DECT radio units .....	220
6.5.3.5	Malfunction of the Aastra DECT radio unit .....	222
6.5.3.6	Malfunctions of Aastra DECT cordless phones .....	222
6.5.3.7	Malfunctions of the DECT charging bays .....	223
6.5.3.8	Longclicks on Aastra DECT cordless phones .....	224
6.5.3.9	Overload code displays Office 135 / Office 160 .....	225
6.5.4	Other aids .....	226
6.5.4.1	Maintenance menu on the Office 45 .....	226
6.5.4.2	Fault & Maintenance Manager .....	228
6.5.4.3	System Event Manager SEM .....	228
6.5.4.4	Measuring equipment for cordless systems .....	228
<b>7</b>	<b>Annex .....</b>	<b>229</b>
7.1	Systematic Designation System .....	229
7.2	Rating Plate and Designation Stickers .....	230
7.3	Equipment Overview .....	231
7.4	Technical Data .....	232
7.4.1	Network interfaces .....	232
7.4.2	Terminal interfaces .....	232
7.4.3	Communication server .....	234
7.4.4	Design of interface cards, modules and wiring adapters .....	235
7.4.5	LAN switch .....	237
7.4.6	Digital and IP system phones .....	237
7.4.7	Aastra DECT Radio units .....	238
7.5	Operation of digital system phones .....	241
7.5.1	Digit key assignment of system phones .....	241
7.5.2	Alpha keyboard Aastra 5380/5380ip .....	243
7.5.3	Alphanumeric keyboard (AKB) .....	244
7.5.4	Function commands (macros) .....	245
7.6	Functions and terminals no longer supported .....	246
7.7	Licensing information of third-party software products .....	247
7.8	Documents and online help systems with further information ...	249
	<b>Index .....</b>	<b>251</b>

# 1 Product and Safety Information

**Here you will find information relating to safety, data protection and legal matters besides product and documentation information. Please read through the product and safety information carefully.**

## 1.1 Product information

### Purpose and function

Aastra 400 is an open, modular and comprehensive communication solution for the business sector with several communication servers of different performance and expansion capacity, an extensive telephone portfolio and a multitude of expansions.

The expansion possibilities for the Aastra 415/430 communication server include an FMC Controller for integrating mobile phones, an open interface for application developers and a multitude of expansion cards and modules.

The business communication solution with all its elements was designed to cover the full spectrum of communication requirements of businesses and organizations in a user and maintenance-friendly way. The individual products and parts are coordinated and cannot be used for other purposes or replaced by outside products or parts (except to connect up other authorized networks, applications and phones to the interfaces certified for that purpose).

### User groups

The phones, softphones and PC applications of the Aastra 400 communication solution are particularly user friendly in design and can be used by all end users without any specific product training.

The phones and PC applications for professional applications such as PC operator consoles or call centre applications require training of the personnel.

Specialist knowledge of IT and telephony is assumed for the planning, installation, configuration, commissioning and maintenance. Regular attendance at product training courses is strongly recommended.

### User information

Aastra 400 products are supplied complete with safety and product information, quick user's guides and user's guides.

These and all other user documents such as system manuals are available for download from the Aastra 400 DocFinder as individual documents or as a documentation set. Some user documents are accessible only via a partner login.

It is your responsibility as a specialist retailer to keep up to date with the scope of functions, the proper use and the operation of the Aastra 400 communication solution and to inform and instruct your customers about all the user-related aspects of the installed system:

- Please make sure you have all the user documents required to install, configure and commission a Aastra 400 communication system and to operate it efficiently and correctly.
- Make sure that the versions of the user documents comply with the software level of the Aastra 400 products used and that you have the latest editions.
- Always read the user documents first before you install, configure and put a Aastra 400 communication solution into operation.
- Ensure that all end users have access to the user's guides.

#### Downloading documents from the internet

Aastra 400 DocFinder: [www.aastra.com/DocFinder](http://www.aastra.com/DocFinder)

© The information, graphics and layouts featured in the user information are subject to copyright and may not be duplicated, presented or processed without the written consent of Aastra Telecom Schweiz AG.

## Conformity

Aastra Telecom Schweiz AG hereby declares that

- the Aastra 400 products conform to the basic requirements and other relevant stipulations of Directive 1999/5/EC.
- all our products are manufactured in conformity with RoHS and WEEE (2002/95/EC and 2002/96/EC).

The product-specific declarations of conformity can be found on the Aastra 400 DocFinder.

## Trade names

Aastra® is a registered trademark of Aastra Technologies Limited.

All other trademarks, product names and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective proprietors.

### Usage of third party software

Aastra 400 products comprise, or are partially based on, third-party software products. The licence information for these third-party products is listed in the user's guide of the Aastra 400 product in question (see also 7.7).

### Exclusion of Liability

All parts and components of the Aastra 400 communication solution are manufactured in accordance with ISO 9001 quality guidelines. The relevant user information has been compiled with the utmost care. The functions of the Aastra 400 products have been tested and approved after comprehensive conformity tests. Nonetheless errors cannot be entirely excluded. The manufacturers shall not be liable for any direct or indirect damage that may be caused by incorrect handling, improper use, or any other faulty behaviour. Potential areas of particular risk are signalled in the appropriate sections of the user information. Liability for loss of profit is excluded in any case.

### Environment

Aastra 400 products are delivered in recycled, chlorine-free corrugated cardboard packaging. The parts are also wrapped inside a protective fleece made of polyethylene foam fleece or polyethylene film for added protection during shipping. The packaging is to be disposed of in accordance with the guidelines stipulated under current legislation.



Aastra 400 products contain plastics based on a pure ABS, sheet steel with an aluminium-zinc or zinc finish, and epoxy resin-based PCBs. These materials are to be disposed of in accordance with the guidelines stipulated under current legislation.

Aastra 400 products are disassembled exclusively using detachable screwed connections.

## 1.2 Safety information

### Reference to hazards

Hazard warnings are affixed whenever there is a risk that improper handling may put people at risk or cause damage to the Aastra 400 product. Please take note of these warnings and follow them at all times. Please also take note in particular of hazard warnings contained in the user information.

## Operating safety

Aastra 400 communication servers are operated on 230 VAC mains power. Communication servers and all their components (e.g. telephones) will not operate when mains power fails. Interruptions in the power supply will cause the entire system to restart. A UPS system has to be connected up-circuit to ensure an uninterruptible power supply. Up to a specific performance limit a Aastra 470 communication server can also be operated redundantly using an auxiliary power supply. For more information please refer to your communication server's system manual.

When the communication server is started for the first time, all the configuration data is reset. You are advised to backup your configuration data on a regular basis as well as before and after any changes.

## Installation and operating instructions

Before you begin with the installation of the Aastra 400 communication server:

- Check that the delivery is complete and undamaged. Notify your supplier immediately of any defects; do not install or put into operation any components that may be defective.
- Check that you have all the relevant user documents at your disposal.
- During the installation follow the installation instructions for your Aastra 400 product and observe to the letter the safety warnings they contain.

Any servicing, expansion or repair work is to be carried out only by technical personnel with the appropriate qualifications.

## 1.3 Data Protection

### Protection of user data

During operation the communication system records and stores user data (e.g. call data, contacts, voice messages, etc.). Protect this data from unauthorised access by using restrictive access control:

- For remote management use SRM (Secure IP Remote Management) or set up the IP network in such a way that from the outside only authorised persons have access to the IP addresses of the Aastra 400 products.
- Restrict the number of user accounts to the minimum necessary and assign to the user accounts only those authorisation profiles that are actually required.

- Instruct system assistants to open the remote maintenance access to the communication server only for the amount of time needed for access.
- Instruct users with access rights to change their passwords on a regular basis and keep them under lock and key.

### Protection against listening in and recording

The Aastra 400 communication solution comprises features which allow calls to be monitored and recorded without the call parties noticing. Inform your customers that these features can only be used in compliance with national data protection provisions.

Unencrypted phone calls made in the IP network can be recorded and played back by anyone with the right resources:

- Use encrypted voice transmission (Secure VoIP) whenever possible.
- For WAN links used for transmitting calls from IP or SIP phones, use as a matter of preference either the customer's own dedicated leased lines or with VPN encrypted connection paths.

## 1.4 About this System Manual

This System Manual contains information on the expansion stages, system capacity, installation, configuration, running and maintenance of Aastra communication systems as well as their technical data. The system functions and features, the DECT planning and the possibilities for networking several systems into a private network (PISN) or an Aastra Intelligent Net (AIN) are not part of this Manual; they are described in separate documents.

The System Manual is available only in electronic form as a document in Acrobat Reader format, and can be printed out. Navigation in PDF format is based on the bookmarks, table of contents, cross references and index. All these navigation aids are linked, i.e. a mouse click takes you directly to the corresponding places in the Manual. We have also ensured that the page numbering in the PDF navigation corresponds to the page numbering of the Manual, making it much easier to jump to a particular page.

Referenced menu entries and parameters appearing on terminal displays or in AIMS AMS (Aastra Management Suite) are *highlighted* in italics and in colour for a clearer orientation.

## Document information

- Document number: syd-0344
- Document version: 1.3
- Valid as of: R2.0
- © 02.2012 Aastra Technologies Limited
- In PDF viewer, click on this link to download the latest version of this document:  
[https://pbxweb.aastra.com/doc\\_finder/DocFinder/syd-0344\\_en.pdf?get&DNR=syd-0344](https://pbxweb.aastra.com/doc_finder/DocFinder/syd-0344_en.pdf?get&DNR=syd-0344)

## General Considerations

Special symbols for additional information and document references.



### Note

Failure to observe information identified in this way can lead to equipment faults or malfunctions or affect the performance of the system.



### Tip

Additional information on the handling or alternative operation of equipment.



### See also

Reference to other chapters within the document or to other documents.



### Aastra Intelligent Net:

Particularities that have to be observed in an AIN.

## Safety Considerations

Special hazard alert messages with pictograms are used to signal areas of particular risk to people or equipment.



### Hazard

Failure to observe information identified in this way can put people and hardware at risk through electrical shock or short-circuits respectively.



### Warning

Failure to observe information identified in this way can cause a defect to a module.



### Warning

Failure to observe information identified in this way can lead to damage caused by electrostatic discharge.

## **1.5 About Aastra**

Aastra Technologies Limited is one of the world's leading manufacturers of communication systems. When developing products and solutions the prime objective is always to optimise the communication processes of small, medium and large companies and cut costs as a result.

Aspects of modern office communications such as mobility, future viability, security and availability are as much an integral part of the development work as user friendliness and product design. The offer covers the entire range of VoIP and SIP solutions, including communication servers, gateways, system phones and process-oriented software solutions.

With its pioneering innovations Aastra consistently promotes the convergence of voice and data communications in its solutions. Aastra's clientele includes acknowledged telephone and data network operators in North America, Europe and Africa as well as Internet Service Providers and distributors of renown.

Aastra Technologies Limited, (TSX: "AAH"), is a leading company at the forefront of the enterprise communication market. Headquartered in Concord, Ontario, Canada, Aastra develops and delivers innovative communication products and applications for businesses. Aastra's operations are truly global with more than 50 million installed lines around the world and a direct and indirect presence in more than 100 countries. The large portfolio offers multi-functional Call Managers for small and medium-sized companies as well as highly scalable Call Managers for big companies. Integrated mobility solutions, call centre solutions and a broad range of telephones round off the portfolio. With a strong focus on open standards, Aastra enables enterprises to communicate and collaborate more efficiently. For additional information on Aastra, visit our website.

## 2 System Overview

**This chapter provides a brief overview of the Aastra 415 and Aastra 430 communication servers with the installation versions, the positioning within the Aastra 400 series and the networking possibilities. It also features the system phones, the applications and the application interfaces.**

### 2.1 Introduction

Aastra 400 is a family of IP-based communications servers for professional use in companies and organizations operating as small and medium-sized businesses in all industries. The family consists of three systems with different expansion capacities. The systems can be expanded using cards, modules and licences, and adapted to the specific requirements of companies.

The family covers the growing demand for solutions in the area of unified communications, multimedia and enhanced mobile services. It is an open system that supports global standards and is therefore easily integrated into any existing infrastructure.

With its wide range of networking capabilities the system is particularly well suited for companies that operate in several locations. Coverage can even be extended to the smallest branch offices at low cost.

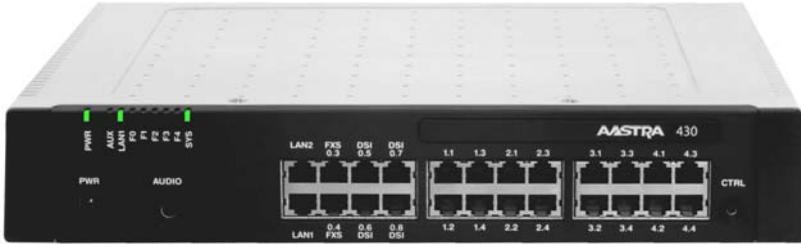
Aastra 400 communication systems handle “Voice over IP” technology with all its benefits. What’s more, the systems operate just as easily with traditional digital or analogue phones and public networks.

With the integrated Media Gateways any hybrid forms of an IP-based and digital or analogue communication environment are also possible. This enables customers to make the switch from traditional telephony to IP-based multimedia communication either in just one step or, gradually, in several stages.

### 2.2 Communication server

The Aastra 415 and Aastra 430 communication servers are at the lower end of the Aastra 400 family in terms of system capacity and expansion possibilities. However all Aastra 400 communication servers are equipped with the same system software and offer the full scope of performance.

All the connections and control elements are accessible from the front. The display elements are arranged so that they remain visible whatever the installation position.



**Fig. 1 Aastra 430**

The communication server can be expanded using interface cards and system modules. The number of available slots and sockets depends on the type of communication server.

## 2. 2. 1 Installation versions

Aastra 415 and Aastra 430 are suitable for both desktop installation, wall mounting and installation in a 19" rack. Covers for connecting cables and special installation covers for rack installation are available separately.



Wall mounting with cable cover



Desktop installation



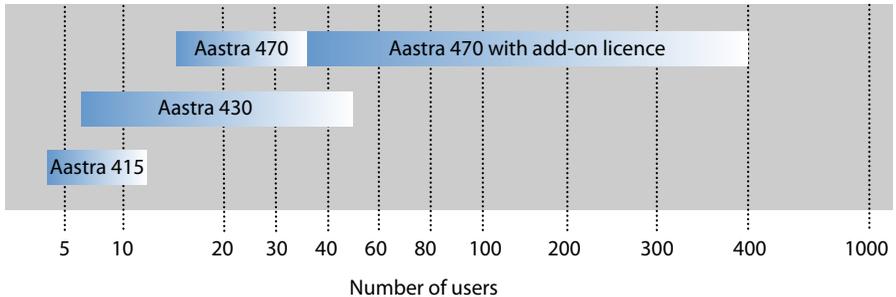
Rack-mounted installation

**Fig. 2 Installation versions**

## 2.2.2 Positioning

Applications range from very small offices and branches (Aastra 415) to small and medium-sized companies (Aastra 430).

The graphic below shows the Aastra 400 communication servers with their expansion capacity for IP system phones.



**Fig. 3** Aastra 400 communication servers and their expansion capacity for IP system phones

## 2.3 Networking Possibilities

Aastra 400 communication servers at different company locations, even beyond national borders, can be linked together to form an enterprise-wide private communication network with a common numbering plan. The following networking types are possible:

### Aastra Intelligent Net (AIN)

In an AIN several communication servers of the Aastra 400 series can be connected up to form a homogeneous communication system. The single systems are connected with one another via the IP network, thereby forming the nodes of the overall AIN system. One node acts as the Master and controls the other (satellite) nodes. All the features are then available at all the nodes.

No call charges are incurred as the internal voice traffic between locations is routed via the system's own data network. All the AIN nodes are configured and set up centrally via the Master.

If a node is isolated from the rest of the AIN by an interruption in the IP connection, it restarts with an emergency configuration after a set amount of time. The connections are then routed to the public network via local links, for example with ISDN or SIP connections, until contact with the AIN is restored.

### **SIP networking**

Networking based on the open global SIP protocol is the universal way of connecting several systems with one another via the private data network or the internet. Aastra 400 communication platforms can be used to network up to 100 other Aastra systems or SIP-compatible third-party systems. All the main telephony features such as call number and name display, enquiry call, hold, brokering, call transfer and conference circuits are supported. The transmission of DTMF signals and the T.38 protocol for Fax over IP between the nodes is also possible.

### **Virtual and leased-line networking via BRI/PRI interfaces**

With this type of connection the nodes are connected via basic rate interfaces (BRI) or primary rate interfaces (PRI).

With virtual networking all the nodes are connected via the public ISDN network. This type of networking is particularly well suited for geographically dispersed locations which have such a low volume of calls between locations that leased lines or setting up a private data network are not worthwhile. The range of services available in a virtual network depends on the range of services offered by the network provider. The DSS1 ISDN protocol is the main protocol used.

With leased line networking the nodes are connected via dedicated or leased lines. One advantage of leased line networking are the fixed costs, regardless of the number of call connections. The most common protocol used is QSIG/PSS1, which supports several more features than the DSS1 protocol.

Virtual and leased-line networking can also be used in combination. Aastra systems as well as third-party systems can be used.

## 2.4 Aastra system phones and clients

Aastra system phones stand out by virtue of their high level of user convenience and their attractive design. The broad range of products ensures there is a suitable model for every use.

**Tab. 1 Digital system phones of the Aastra 5300 family**

Product	Principal common features	Additional model-specific features
 Aastra 5361  Aastra 5370  Aastra 5380	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Intuitive and user-friendly menu prompting with Foxkey and central navigation key</li> <li>• All the system features can be used</li> <li>• Automatic update of the phone software</li> <li>• Connection via DSI interface</li> <li>• Two phones can be connected per DSI interface</li> <li>• Powered via DSI bus or power supply</li> <li>• Wall mounting possible</li> </ul>	<p>Aastra 5370/Aastra 5380:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Expansion key modules can be connected</li> <li>• Headset socket with DHSG standard</li> </ul> <p>Aastra 5380:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Backlit display</li> <li>• Optional Bluetooth module</li> <li>• Can be used as operator console when combined with expansion key module</li> </ul>
<p>Note: The digital system phones of the Office family (Office 10, Office 25, Office 35, Office 45 and Office 45pro) are supported as before (not all system features can be used).</p>		

**Tab. 2 IP system phones (hardphones) of the Aastra 5300ip family**

Product	Principal common features	Additional model-specific features
 Aastra 5361ip  Aastra 5370ip  Aastra 5380ip	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Intuitive and user-friendly menu prompting with Foxkey and central navigation key</li> <li>• All the system features can be used</li> <li>• Excellent voice quality due to Aastra Hi-Q™ wideband audio technology</li> <li>• Automatic update of the phone software</li> <li>• Connection via Ethernet</li> <li>• Powered via Ethernet (POE) or power supply</li> <li>• Wall mounting possible</li> <li>• Web configuration interface</li> </ul>	<p>Aastra 5370ip/Aastra 5380ip:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Expansion key modules can be connected</li> <li>• Headset socket with DHSG standard</li> <li>• Integrated switch for connecting a PC</li> </ul> <p>Aastra 5380:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Backlit display</li> <li>• Optional Bluetooth module</li> <li>• Can be used as operator console when combined with expansion key module</li> </ul>
<p>Note: The Aastra 5360ip IP system phone is supported as before.</p>		

**Tab. 3 IP system phones (softphones) and clients**

Product	Main features
 <p>Aastra 2380ip</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Autonomous, powerful, IP-based PC system phone with intuitive user interface</li> <li>• Can be used with headset or handset via PC audio interface, USB or Bluetooth</li> <li>• Graphical user interface with mouse and keyboard operation</li> <li>• Displayable expansion keypad for team keys, functions and phone numbers</li> <li>• Displayable keypad</li> <li>• Ring tones expandable using .mp3, .mid and .wav files</li> <li>• Call contacts directly from Outlook</li> <li>• All the system features can be used</li> </ul>
 <p>Aastra 1560 Aastra 1560ip</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• OIP client application for a professional PC operator console</li> <li>• Can be used purely as an IP softphone (Aastra 1560ip) or together with a system phone (Aastra 1560)</li> <li>• Graphical user interface with mouse and keyboard operation</li> <li>• Can be used in an AIN as a network-wide PC operator console</li> <li>• Call management with internal and external queues</li> <li>• Presence indicator, presence profiles, phone book and journal</li> <li>• Operator groups and agent control</li> <li>• Line keys and calendar functions</li> <li>• Possibility of synchronisation with a Microsoft Exchange server</li> <li>• All the system features can be used</li> </ul>
 <p>OfficeSuite</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• OIP client application for PC-based call management</li> <li>• Used in conjunction with a system phone</li> <li>• Graphical user interface with mouse and keyboard operation</li> <li>• Configuration of the coupled system phone</li> <li>• Call manager with extensive functions and options</li> <li>• Presence indicator of other users</li> <li>• Configurable presence profiles</li> <li>• Phone book with address books and personal contacts</li> <li>• Journal with call lists, text messages and notes</li> <li>• Workgroups (agent control)</li> <li>• Possibility of synchronisation with a Microsoft Exchange server</li> <li>• Possibility of displaying various additional windows</li> <li>• All the system features can be used</li> </ul>
 <p>Aastra Mobile Client (AMC)</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• FMC client for mobile phones (runs on various operating systems)</li> <li>• Integrates the mobile phone into the Aastra communication system</li> <li>• User is always reachable under the same call number (One Number concept)</li> <li>• Various telephone functions can be menu-operated both in the idle state and during a call</li> <li>• Other system features can be used via function codes</li> <li>• With AMC Controller handover is possible between internal WLAN and mobile radio network</li> </ul>

Note:  
The Office 1560/1560IP operator application is supported as before.

**Tab. 4 Cordless system phones of the Aastra 600d family**

Product	Principal common features	Additional model-specific features
 <p>Aastra 610d</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Intuitive and user-friendly menu prompting with Foxkey and central navigation key</li> <li>• All the system features can be used</li> <li>• Automatic update of the phone software</li> <li>• Backlit display and keyboard</li> <li>• Headset socket</li> <li>• Automatic handover and roaming</li> <li>• Can be operated on both the DSI radio units SB-4+, SB-8, SB-8ANT and the SIP-DECT radio units RFP L32 IP, RFP L34 IP and RFP L42 WLAN</li> </ul>	<p>Aastra 620d/Aastra 630d:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Colour display</li> <li>• Three freely configurable keys</li> <li>• Vibra call</li> <li>• Bluetooth interface</li> <li>• USB Interface</li> <li>• Power battery (optional)</li> </ul> <p>Aastra 630d:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Complies with industry standard (IP65)</li> <li>• With emergency button and sensor alarms, suitable for personal protection</li> </ul>
 <p>Aastra 620d</p>		
 <p>Aastra 630d</p>		

Note:  
The Office 135/135pro and Office 160pro/Safeguard/ATEX) cordless system phones are supported as before (not all system features can be used).

**Tab. 5 SIP Multimedia Terminal Aastra BluStar™ 8000i<sup>1)</sup>**

Product	Main features
 <p>Aastra 8000i</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Intelligent multimedia terminal with intuitive operation</li> <li>• Video conferencing solution, collaboration tool and application platform in one.</li> <li>• XML browser compatible</li> <li>• Bluetooth interface</li> <li>• Can be connected to a laptop</li> <li>• HD video camera with 30 frames per second</li> <li>• Three loudspeakers for voice transmission in HD audio quality</li> <li>• Four microphones to eliminate unwanted background noise</li> <li>• 13 inch colour touch-screen display</li> <li>• Biometric fingerprint reader</li> <li>• Desktop sharing</li> <li>• SIP-based</li> </ul>

<sup>1)</sup> The release for Aastra BluStar™ 8000i, Aastra 6735i and Aastra 6737i is independent from R1.2 and will be made later.

**Tab. 6 SIP phones of the Aastra 6730i<sup>1)</sup> series**

Product	Principal common features	Additional model-specific features
 <p>Aastra 6730i</p>  <p>Aastra 6731i</p>  <p>Aastra 6735i</p>  <p>Aastra 6737i</p>  <p>Aastra 6739i</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• User-friendly registration, configuration and operation of system features through Aastra 400 integration.</li> <li>• XML browser compatible</li> <li>• Automatic update of the terminal software</li> <li>• Web-user interface</li> <li>• Excellent voice quality due to Aastra Hi-Q™ wideband audio technology</li> <li>• Full-duplex hands-free operation (speakerphone)</li> <li>• Wall mounting possible</li> <li>• Power over Ethernet (except Aastra 6730i)</li> </ul>	<p><b>Aastra 6731i:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Integrated 10/100 Mbit Ethernet switch for connecting a PC</li> </ul> <p><b>Aastra 6735i, Aastra 6737i, and Aastra 6739i:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Integrated Gbit Ethernet switch for connecting a PC</li> <li>• Backlit display</li> <li>• Expansion key modules can be connected</li> <li>• Headset socket (DHS standard)</li> </ul> <p><b>Aastra 6739i:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Bluetooth interface</li> <li>• USB Interface</li> </ul> <p><b>General:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Additional model-specific features include the resolution, the display type and size, and the number of configurable or fixed function keys.</li> </ul>

**Tab. 7 SIP phones of the Aastra 6750i series**

Product	Principal common features	Additional model-specific features
 <p>Aastra 6753i</p>  <p>Aastra 6755i</p>  <p>Aastra 6757i</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• User-friendly registration, configuration and operation of system features through Aastra 400 integration.</li> <li>• XML browser compatible</li> <li>• Automatic update of the terminal software</li> <li>• Web-user interface</li> <li>• Excellent voice quality due to Aastra Hi-Q™ wideband audio technology</li> <li>• Full-duplex hands-free operation (speakerphone)</li> <li>• Wall mounting possible</li> <li>• Integrated 10/100 Mbit Ethernet switch for connecting a PC</li> <li>• Power over Ethernet</li> </ul>	<p>Model-specific features include the resolution, the display type and size, and the number of configurable or fixed function keys.</p>

**Tab. 8 Analogue Aastra phones**

Product	Principal common features	Additional model-specific features
 <p>Aastra 1910</p>  <p>Aastra 1930</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Destination dialling keys</li> <li>• Frequency dialling or pulse dialling</li> <li>• System features can be used via function codes</li> <li>• Wall mounting possible</li> <li>• Connection for data modem</li> <li>• Hearing aid compatible</li> <li>• Message list</li> </ul>	<p>Aastra 1930:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Three-line display</li> <li>• 135 phone book contacts</li> <li>• Number/name display for incoming calls</li> <li>• Automatic call answering</li> <li>• Headset socket</li> </ul>

## 2.5 Various phones and terminals

Thanks to the use of international standards other clients, terminals and phones, Aastra and third-party, can be connected and operated on the communication server:

- SIP-based phones
 

With the integrated SIP protocol SIP-based phones (softphones, hardphones) - or via an SIP access point also WLAN and DECT phones - can be connected to the communication server. Besides the basic telephony functions, features such as call transfer, conference calls or CLIP/CLIR are also supported. Function codes can also be used to operate various system functions.
- Cordless phones
 

The sturdy 9d DECT phones from the Ascom Wireless Solutions product portfolio can be logged on to the communication server as system phones. User-friendly messaging and alarm systems can thus be implemented in combination with the IMS (Integrated Message Server). Other DECT phones can also be operated in GAP mode.
- Mobile phones
 

Mobile phones can also be integrated into the communication system. They can then be reached under an internal call number, and their status is monitored and displayed. Internal/external calls can be made via the integrated mobile phone; system functions can also be executed using function codes. With the Aastra Mobile Client application all the main telephony functions are available with menu prompting (see "[Aastra applications](#)", page 24).

- Analogue terminals  
All terminals (phones, fax, modem, etc.) approved by the network operator can be connected on the analogue terminal interfaces. The communication system supports pulse and frequency dialling modes.
- ISDN terminals  
ISDN terminals that comply with the Euro ISDN standard can be connected to the BRI-S terminal interfaces. The communication system provides a series of ISDN features at the S bus.

## 2.6 Applications and application interfaces

A distinction is made among applications between Aastra-specific applications and certified applications supplied by third parties.

The Aastra applications Open Interfaces Platform (OIP) and Telephony Web Portal (TWP) as well as the certified third-party applications are installed on a customer server. They communicate with the communication server via standardised interfaces (see "Application interfaces", page 26).

Auxiliary applications for planning and the configuration and park management are available as a separate software application or web application.

### 2.6.1 Aastra applications

**Tab. 9 Aastra applications OIP and TWP**

Application	Main features
 <p>Open Interfaces Platform (OIP)</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Application interface for deep integration of applications by Aastra or other manufacturers (see "Application interfaces", page 26)</li> <li>• Simple operation and administration using OIP Toolbox</li> <li>• Integrates the Aastra 1560/1560ip / Office 1560/1560IP and OfficeSuite applications</li> <li>• Presence-controlled communication coupled with Outlook diary entries</li> <li>• Integration of contact databases and directories (Outlook, Exchange, Active Directory, LDAP directories, phone book CD)</li> <li>• Integration of building automation equipment and alarm systems</li> <li>• Call centre functions with flexible routing algorithms, skill-based agent groups and emergency routing</li> <li>• Unified messaging with notification whenever new voice messages are received via email (incl. message attachment)</li> <li>• Partner program for integrating and certifying applications by other manufacturers</li> </ul>

Application	Main features
 <p>Aastra Telephony Web Portal (TWP)</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Unified &amp; collaborative communication application with extensive multimedia services</li> <li>• Call management functions, e-mail, text messaging, chat</li> <li>• Video conference circuits and desktop sharing</li> <li>• Video and audio recordings</li> <li>• Statistics functions</li> <li>• Team functions such as presence key and abbreviated dialling</li> <li>• Directory integration</li> </ul>

**Tab. 10 Planning and configuration applications**

Application	Main features
Aastra Plan	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Web-based planning application for Aastra communication platforms</li> <li>• Uses project data to calculate the necessary communication server complete with terminals, interface cards, modules and licences</li> <li>• Country-specific adaptations possible for accessories</li> <li>• Stored price lists and configurable quote compilation</li> <li>• No installation necessary</li> </ul>
WebAdmin	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Web-based configuration tool for the online configuration of single systems</li> <li>• Access control with predefined authorization profiles</li> <li>• Special accesses for hospitality solutions</li> <li>• Integrated online help and configuration assistant</li> <li>• Integrated in the communication server software package</li> <li>• No installation necessary</li> </ul>
Aastra Hospitality Manager	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Integrated web-based application used to operate functions in the hospitality sector</li> <li>• List view and floor-by-floor view of the rooms</li> <li>• Functions such as check-in, check-out, notification, wake-up call, retrieval of call charges, maintenance list, etc.</li> </ul>
Aastra Management Suite (AMS)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Software package for the configuration and monitoring of a single system or an entire network (AIN)</li> <li>• Contains auxiliary applications such as Smart Software Update, System Search and Aastra WAV Converter</li> <li>• Access control with user accounts and configurable authorization profiles</li> <li>• Online and offline configuration possible</li> <li>• For installation on your own PC</li> </ul>
Secure IP Remote Management (SRM)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Server-based solution for secure IP remote management</li> <li>• No router and firewall configuration or VPN connection setup required</li> <li>• Allows configuration via AMS or WebAdmin once the connection has been set up</li> <li>• No installation necessary</li> </ul>

## 2.6.2 Application interfaces

The most important interface for own and third-party applications is the interface of the Open Interfaces Platform (OIP). This open interface allows the applications to be deeply integrated with telephony. Third-party applications can also be integrated on systems of the Aastra 400 series via different interfaces without OIP.

### 2.6.2.1 Open Interfaces Platform

The Open Interfaces Platform (OIP) is a software component that is connected to one of the supported communication systems as middleware and allows the integration of data sources and applications. The applications themselves are connected directly to the OIP interface (CORBA) or the OIP TAPI service provider.

The applications access many powerful functions of the communication system and of OIP itself.

These added-value services significantly broaden the use of the communication systems and provide a seamless convergence of computer and telephony applications for the user. With the clearly structured interface the application manufacturer is able to gain easy access to the communication system and at the same time benefit from the integrated functionality of OIP.

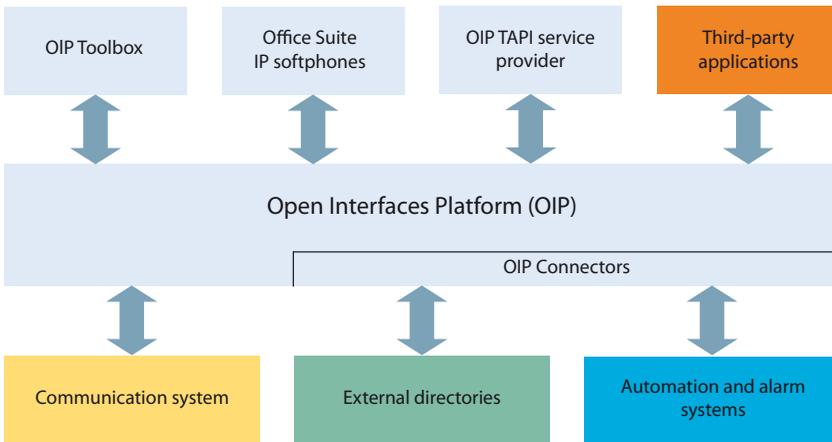


Fig. 4 OIP as middleware between communication system, external data sources and applications

## Features

With OIP the applications are provided with many other features besides telephony functions. The operation and administration of the OIP and its applications is made simple and user-friendly by the OIP Toolbox.

## OIP applications

OIP applications are specific user applications such as softphone applications which run on the OIP server. The OIP Toolbox is a collection of integrated OIP applications.

## OIP services

The OIP services are the core components of the Open Interfaces Platform and are in charge of controlling the system. They provide interface functions, which the system is being controlled (e.g. Call Control or configuration).

## OIP as telephony server

OIP can be used as a telephony server to provide CTI functionalities on telephony clients. The Microsoft telephony server is now no longer required. Added security is also provided with the different rights assignment.

## OIP on several communication servers

An OIP server can also be used as in an Aastra Intelligent Net. To do so, it will be linked to the Master. It is then possible for instance to obtain network-wide call logging for all the communication servers, to display call charge information on the system phones or to display status on the presence indicator field of a PC operator console for all the users connected.

## Connection of external data sources

OIP supports the connection of external directories and it is also possible to set up adaptable alarming and messaging systems.

### 2.6.2.2 Message and alarm systems

Aastra 400 supports several message formats and message protocols for implementing messaging, monitoring and alarm systems.

#### **Internal messaging system for system phones**

The internal messaging system for system terminals allows users to exchange pre-defined or user-defined text messages between system phones. Text messages can also be sent to individual users or message groups.

The internal messaging system does not have an interface with which it can be addressed directly. However it can also be operated via OIP.

#### **External messaging, monitoring and alarm systems**

The powerful ATAS/ATASpro protocol is available via the communication server's Ethernet interface for applications in the security and alarming sector. This protocol can be used to implement customised alarm applications. An alarm appears on the display of system phones, complete with the freely definable user functions that apply only to that alarm. In addition the duration of the tone as well as its volume and melody can be freely defined by the user for each alarm.

The cordless DECT phone Aastra 630d is specially designed for applications in the security and alarming sector. Besides a special alarm button it also features a man-down alarm, a no-movement alarm and an escape alarm. Sensors inside the phone constantly check the handset's position and motion. An alarm is triggered if the phone remains in a virtually horizontal position or motionless for some time or if the handset is shaken violently.

### 2.6.2.3 CTI - Computer Telephony Integration

The Computer Telephony Integration (CTI) integrates telephony services in the company process. Besides conventional telephony features Open Interfaces Platform (OIP) offers many other convenient functions, which supports the employees with their daily work, for instance:

- Dialling by name for outgoing calls and CLIP display for incoming calls offers an added value by the integration of external directories and databases.
- Notification of Microsoft Outlook appointments on the system phones
- Presence-controlled communications with Busy Indicator
- Automatic Call Distribution
- Access to system configuration, what a maximum integration of different systems ensures

And of course the communication system supports also First and Third-Party CTI interfaces for commercial CTI applications based on the Microsoft TAPI 2.1 standard.

#### First-party CTI

A first-party CTI is the direct physical connection between a phone terminal and a telephony Client (workstation PC). Telephony functions and telephone states are controlled and monitored on the telephony Client. A first-party CTI solution is ideal for a small number of CTI workstations and is easily implemented.

#### Connection via Ethernet

Aastra 400 supports First-Party CTI on all system phones via the Ethernet interface. For this purpose the First-Party TAPI Service Provider (AIF-TSP) is required.

#### Application example

- Dialling from a database (phone book CD, etc.)
- Caller identification (CLIP)
- Creating a call journal

### Third-party CTI

Third-party CTI is a user-friendly multi-station solution. In contrast to first-party CTI, third-party CTI controls and monitors several system phones (including cordless phones) via the central telephony server, which is connected with the communication server. In addition phones on ISDN and analogue interfaces can also be monitored. PC and phone allocation is handled by the telephony server.

#### Connection via Ethernet with OIP

The CTI Third party connection is effected via Ethernet using the Open Interfaces Platform (OIP). To this end the OIP is installed on the telephony server.

#### Application example

- Busy lamp field
- Group functionality
- Networked CTI solution
- Automatic Call Distribution (ACD)

### 2.6.2.4 ISDN interface

Aastra 400 supports the ISDN protocols ETSI, DSS1 and QSIG. Besides the possibility of networking various systems into a PISN (Private Integrated Services Network) via the ISDN interface, these protocols also provide various functions that can be used for connecting external applications (e. g. IVR systems, fax server, voice mail systems, unified messaging systems, DECT radio systems).

### 2.6.2.5 Configuration

The Aastra 400 communication servers are configured using the AMS application, which can communicate with the communication servers via different interfaces (Ethernet, ISDN). A proprietary protocol is used for this purpose. With the Open Interfaces Platform the configuration interface is accessible for application manufacturers. The web-based configuration tool WebAdmin is also available for single systems.

### 2.6.2.6 System monitoring

The system status is monitored using the SEM (System Event Manager) application, which is included in AMS. The application gathers and outputs the system messages and alarms. The system messages and alarms are also accessible via the Open Interfaces Platform.

### 2.6.2.7 Call logging

The Call Logging Manager includes data acquisition for incoming traffic (ICL), outgoing traffic (OCL) and the counting of the acquired call charges according to a variety of criteria. The data can be retrieved via different interfaces and subsequently processed.

### 2.6.2.8 Accommodation/Hotel<sup>1)</sup>

The Aastra 400 communication server offers you several possibilities for implementing an accommodation and hotel solution, with different configuration tools, operation applications and interfaces. The configuration is carried out using either the AMS Configuration Manager or WebAdmin. The Aastra 5380/5380ip reception phone or the web-based Aastra Hospitality Manager application is available to operate the functions. A connection to a Property Management System (PMS) via the communication server's Ethernet interface is also possible. The commercially available FIAS protocol is provided for this purpose.

### 2.6.2.9 Voice over IP

Aastra 400 provides gateways for implementing Voice over IP. Besides the possibility of networking systems via IP, IP system phones and SIP phones can also be operated on Aastra 400 via the Ethernet interface.

---

<sup>1)</sup> Older configurations created with the AMS Hotel Manager with associated hotel functions and operated using the System Assistant on the Office 45/45pro are still supported.

## 2.7 Connection options

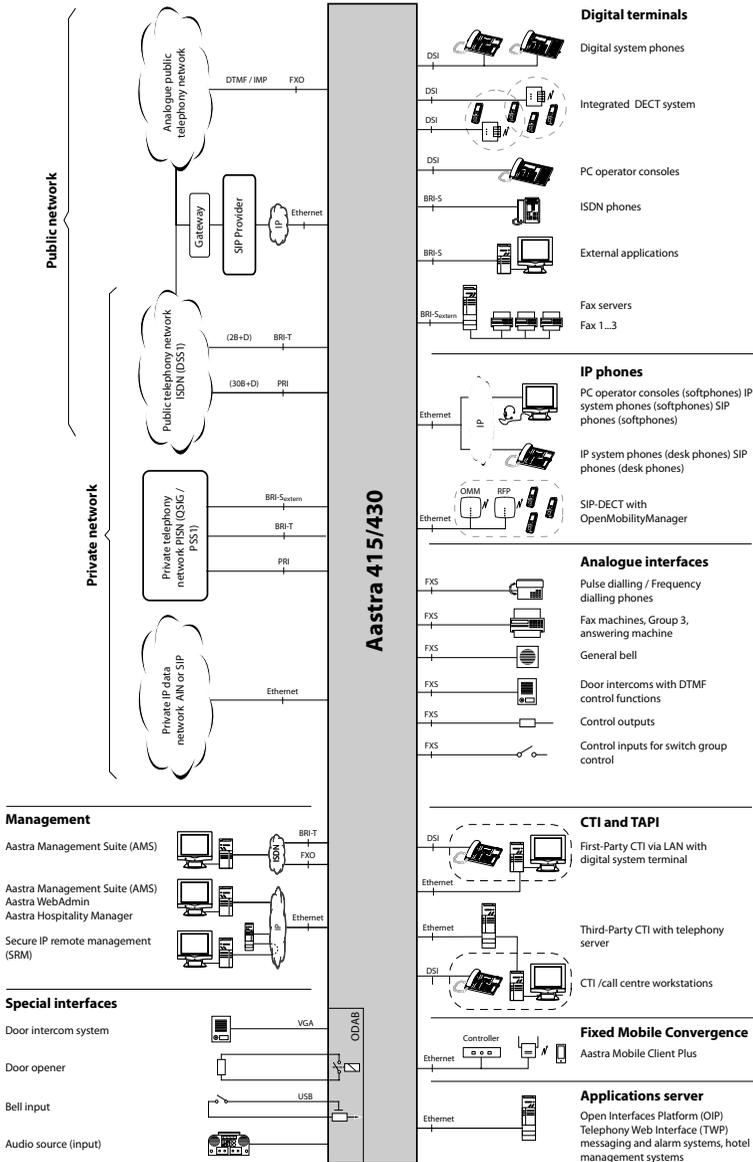


Fig. 5 Overview of interfaces with possible terminal equipment

### 3 Expansion Stages and System Capacity

The basic systems can be expanded using interface cards, system modules and licences. The expansion possibilities available and the maximum system capacities need to be known so the communications system can be ideally adapted to customer requirements. With the project data the optimum hardware configuration is easily determined using the project planning application Aastra Plan.

#### 3.1 Overview

The expansion possibilities of the basic systems Aastra 415 and Aastra 430 at a glance.

The equipment is powered by an external power supply. The same power supply unit is used for Aastra 415 and Aastra 430.

The mounting options are described in the Chapter "Fitting the communication server", page 70.

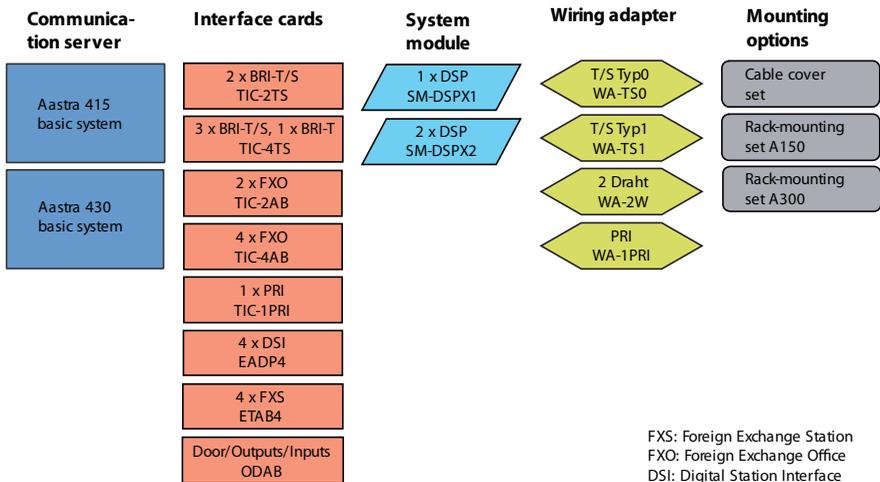


Fig. 6 Overview of the expansion possibilities

## 3.2 Basic system

Aastra 415 and Aastra 430 are based on the same basic system, they differ in terms of the components fitted to the mainboard, the expansion possibilities and the system capacities. The basic systems consists of the following components:

- Mainboard with front panel, screw covers and designation label integrated in metal housing with detachable plastic cover
- Power supply unit with power cord

### 3.2.1 Interfaces, display and control elements

The following mainboard interfaces can be accessed only when the housing cover of the communication server is open:

**Tab. 11 Mainboard**

Interfaces	Aastra 415	Aastra 430	Designation / Remarks
Slots for interface cards	2	4	IC1...IC4 / with snap mechanism
Slots for system modules, type 1	1	1	SM1 / three system modules, stackable
Slots for system modules, type 2	–	1 <sup>1)</sup>	SM2 / three system modules, stackable
Slots for wiring adapters	2	4	WA1...WAx / one slot per wiring adapter
Slot for EIM card	1	1	EIM / card holder
Fan interface <sup>2)</sup>	–	1	FAN / 3-pin connector (Aastra 430 only)

<sup>1)</sup> For future expansions

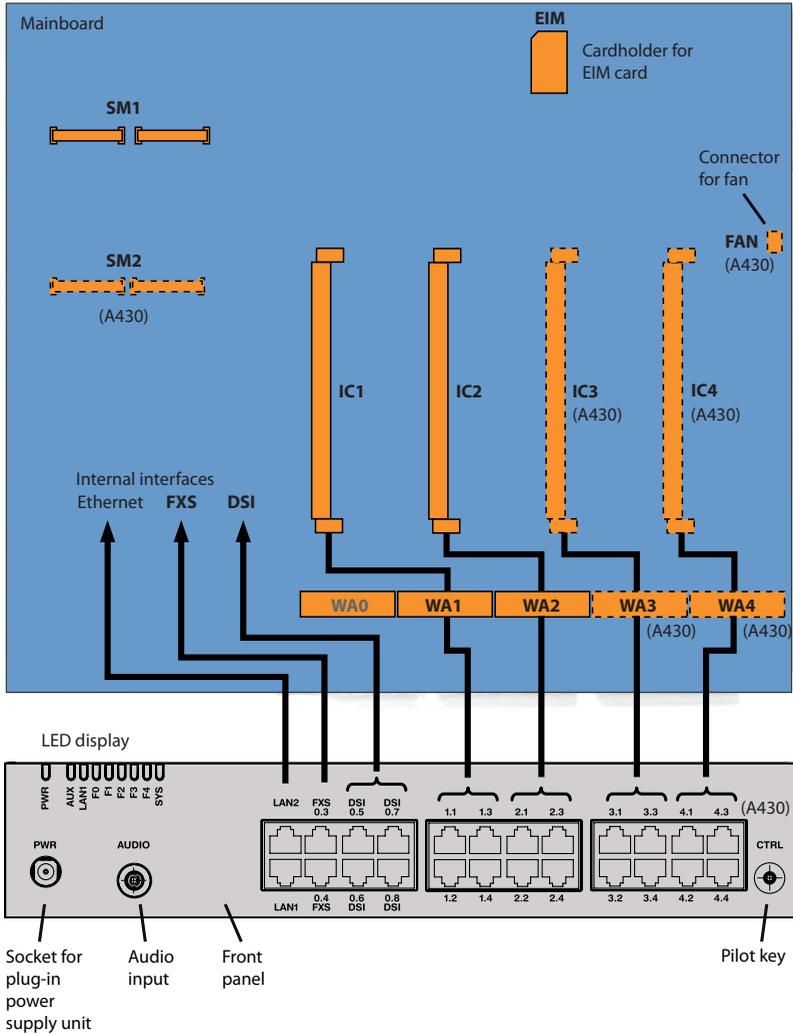
<sup>2)</sup> The fan is required only if the Aastra 430 is rack-mounted

The following interfaces, display and control elements of the mainboard are routed to the front panel:

**Tab. 12 Front panel**

Interfaces	Aastra 415	Aastra 430	Note
DSI terminal interfaces	2	4	RJ45 socket
FXS terminal interfaces	2	2	RJ45 socket
Ethernet interfaces 10/100BaseT, half/full-duplex	2	2	RJ45 socket
RJ45 sockets on front panel, total	16	24	RJ45 socket
Audio input	1	1	3-pin jack socket
Supply input	1	1	2-pin supply socket
Pilot key	1	1	
LED display	1	1	

The diagram below shows the position of all the interfaces and slots on the main-board display and control elements and on the front panel.



Legend:

- IC1...4 Slots for interface cards (trunk cards, terminal cards and options cards)
- WA1...4 slots for wiring adapters
- SM1 Slot for stackable system modules, type 1 (DSP(X) modules)
- SM2 Slot for stackable system modules, type 2 (for future expansions)

**Fig. 7 Mainboard interfaces, display and control elements and front panel**

### 3. 2. 2 Power supply

The system is powered as standard with 230 VAC or 115 VAC using the supplied power supply. The communications server is powered with 19V DC from the power supply. All other voltages are generated directly on the mainboard. To ensure that its operation is maintained even in the event of a mains outage, an external uninterruptible power supply (UPS) must be used. For more details about the power supply see "[Powering the communication server](#)", page 85.

### 3. 2. 3 DSP Resources

DSP resources are used for complex signal processing functions. (DSP stands for Digital Signal Processor). They provide functions for conference circuits, DTMF sender and receiver, compression of voice data, etc. A DSP chip is fitted permanently to the mainboard.

Part of these DSP resources is allocated to fixed functions and can be used without licences (see [Tab. 13](#)).

Another part is allocated to selectable functions, according to requirements. These functions are partly subject to licence (see [Tab. 14](#)).

The basic resources of the communication server can be expanded by fitting DSP modules. The functions of the DSP chips on the modules can also be configured (see [Tab. 20](#) and [Tab. 19](#)).

#### Fixed functions of the mainboard DSP

The table below provides an overview of the fixed functions of the mainboard DSP. No licences or additional hardware is required to use the functions.

**Tab. 13 Fixed functions of the mainboard DSP**

Max. number of simultaneous ...	Aastra 415	Aastra 430
Circuits for the functions three-party conference and six-party conference	4	4
Circuits for the features intrusion and silent intrusion	4	4
Circuits for the Call Waiting function	2	2
Usable DTMF sender	2	2
Usable DTMF receiver	4	4
Usable dial tone receiver	2	4
Usable busy tone receiver	4	4
Channels for playing "welcome announcements"	3	3
Channels for playing "Music on Hold"	1	1
Basic voice mail channels (G.711) <sup>1)</sup>	2	2

Max. number of simultaneous ...	Aastra 415	Aastra 430
FSK receiver for CLIP detection on analogue network interfaces	2	2
FSK transmitter for CLIP display on analogue terminals	2	2

<sup>1)</sup> Can be used without licence subject to the following restrictions: Voice memory capacity approx. 20 minutes, no e-mail notification in the event of new voice messages. With a licence, the basic voice mail can be expanded with the Auto Attendant function.

## Selectable functions of the mainboard DSP

The DSP on the mainboard provides selectable functions. A description of the individual functions can be found as of [page 39](#).

The functions are specified in the *DSP configuration* using the AMS Configuration Manager. In [Tab. 14](#) all the possible combinations are listed, with the maximum number of voice channels. For this the DSP chip on the mainboard has to be loaded with different firmware. Additional functions require the use of one or more DSP modules. Some of these functions are subject to a licence.

**Tab. 14** Selectable functions of the mainboard DSP

DECT	VoIP <sup>1)</sup>	Audio <sup>1)</sup>	GSM <sup>1)</sup>	Modem	Remarks
4					Default configuration
2		2	8		
		4	8		
	3				2 of which can be used without a licence
				1	

<sup>1)</sup> Licences required (see also "Licences", [page 54](#)).



### Notes

- To be able to configure VoIP channels on the mainboard's DSP, make sure the *VoIP mode* parameter is configured to *G.711*. The configured VoIP mode is valid for all the DSP chips of a node. The following also applies to this mode:
  - Two G.711 VoIP channels per system can be used without a licence.
  - The G.711 VoIP channels of the mainboard can be combined with G.711 VoIP channels of DSP modules.
- If voice mail channels are configured and licensed, the two G.711 basic voice mail channels that can be used without a licence are redundant (see [Tab. 13](#)).
- Voice mail channels can only be configured on one DSP chip per node.
- The *Modem* function is used for remote maintenance via an analogue modem and can only be configured on the mainboard's DSP.
- The system has to be restarted for the configuration changes of the DSP to take effect.

### 3.3 Expansion with cards and modules

A basic system can be individually expanded using interface cards and system modules. The number of available expansion slots depends on the type of the basic system (see "Interfaces, display and control elements", page 34).

#### 3.3.1 System modules

System modules expand the resources of the communication server, allowing the system to be expanded step by step in line with requirements.

##### 3.3.1.1 DSP module

Processor-intensive system functions require DSP resources. The communication server's DSP capacity increases through the use of DSP modules.

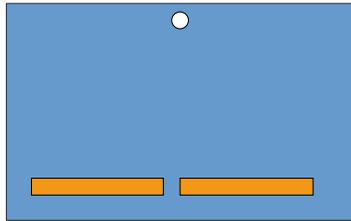


Fig. 8 Design of the DSP module

DSP modules belong to the category of system modules 1 and are stacked to the SM1 slot (see Fig. 7). The different types of modules can be used as a mix.



#### Note

The SM1 and SM2 slots are not identical (the space between the two connector rails is different). Fitting DSP modules on the SM2 slot is thus not mechanically possible.

Tab. 15 DSP modules

Type	Number of DSP chips per module	Max. number of Aastra 415 modules	Max. number of Aastra 430 modules
SM-DSPX1	1	3	3
SM-DSPX2	2		
SM-DSP1 <sup>1)</sup>	1		
SM-DSP2 <sup>1)</sup>	2		

<sup>1)</sup> Although no longer available, the module is still supported.

Compared with DSP modules, modules with the designation DSPX are fitted with more powerful DSP chips. They are used to transmit VoIP data among others using the SRTP protocol (Secure VoIP).

### Allocatable functions

One or more functions can be allocated to the individual DSP chips on the DSP modules. For this the DSP chips have to be loaded with different firmware. The DSP resources can be used for DECT telephony, Voice-over-IP, Voice Mail, hands-free operation, integrated mobile phones or fax transmissions. This means that for each DSP chip a specific number of voice channels is available for the corresponding functions. Some of these functions are subject to a licence (see also "[Licences](#)", [page 54](#)).

- *DECT*

Operation of a DECT system on DSI interfaces with cordless phones. In the case of connections between DECT and non-DECT endpoints the voice data has to be converted. This process requires DSP capacity. DECT channels can be used without a licence.

- *VoIP*

Connections between IP and non-IP endpoints are made via an IP media gateway. This is carry out by the integrated standard media switch that switches VoIP channels for call connections in the IP network. The Standard Media Switch uses DSP resources for the real-time processing of the call data. VoIP channels are always required between IP and non-IP endpoints, e. g. for internal connections between an SIP/IP phone and a digital system phone or e. g. for an external user who is routed to the internal Voice Mail System via an SIP network interface. In an AIN VoIP channels are also used for call connections between the nodes (see [Fig. 9](#) for an overview). The number of configurable VoIP channels depends on both the type of DSP chip (see "[Configuration of DSP chips](#)", [page 43](#)) and the configured mode (see "[Media Switch modes of operation](#)", [page 42](#)). Two G.711-VoIP channels per system can be used without a licence. One *VoIP Channels for Standard Media Switch* licence is required for each additional VoIP channel.

- *FoIP*

Reliable real-time fax transmissions via an IP network using the T.38 fax protocol (ITU-T). FoIP channels can be used without a licence.

- *Audio*

These voice channels are used to play back and record audio data. Each voice channel is also assigned a DTMF receiver to allow user inputs during playback. This requires licences and DSP resources. The voice channels can be used for voice mail, Auto Attendant or call recording. The allocation is configurable (see

"Reserving audio channels", page 42). The number of configurable voice channels depends on both the configured mode (see "Voice-mail system modes of operation", page 43) and the type of DSP chip (see "Configuration of DSP chips", page 43).

- **GSM**

Enhanced functionality is achieved for integrated mobile phones by providing special DTMF receivers during the call connection. Suffix dialling functions (such as enquiry calls or setting up a conference with function codes ) can be carried out as a result. The number of GSM channels – and therefore the number of DTMF receivers – depends on the number of users with integrated mobile phones who want to use this functionality simultaneously. One licence is required for each integrated mobile phone.

## Use of VoIP channels

VoIP channels are always required between IP and non-IP endpoints. They are freely available, i. e. they are always used wherever they happen to be needed. The figure below provides an overview of the cases where VoIP channels are needed and how many.

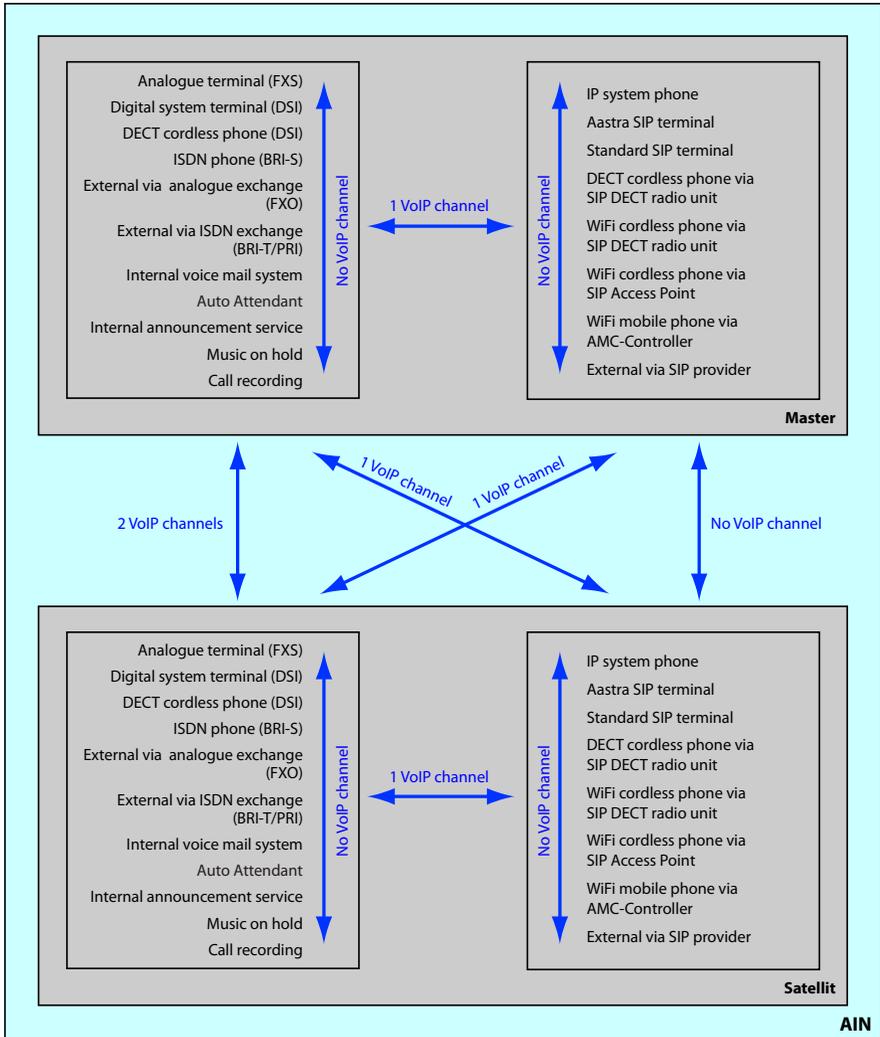


Fig. 9 Overview of the use of VoIP channels

## Media Switch modes of operation

The media switch mode of operation is set in the AMS Configuration Manager using the *VoIP mode* parameter. The configured mode is always valid for the entire node.

**Tab. 16 Integrated Media Switch modes of operation**

<b>VoIP mode</b>	<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Licences</b>
<i>No VoIP</i>	No VoIP channels can be configured.	
<i>G.711</i>	Although more voice channels are available per DSP in mode <i>G.711</i> than in hybrid mode, the volume of voice data is greater and requires a greater bandwidth.	Two VoIP channels per system can be used without a licence. One <i>VoIP Channels for Standard Media Switch</i> licence is required for each additional VoIP channel.
<i>G.711/G.729</i>	The VoIP hybrid mode <i>G.711/G.729</i> handles both <i>G.711</i> and <i>G.729</i> for coding voice data.	One <i>VoIP Channels for Standard Media Switch</i> licence is required for each VoIP channel.
<i>Secure G.711</i>	Same as <i>G.711</i> but with a more secure data transmission using the SRTP protocol.	One <i>VoIP Channels for Standard Media Switch</i> licence is required for each VoIP channel. The <i>Secure VoIP</i> licence valid right across the system is also required.
<i>Secure G.711/G.729</i>	Same as <i>G.711/G.729</i> but with a more secure data transmission using the SRTP protocol.	One <i>VoIP Channels for Standard Media Switch</i> licence is required for each VoIP channel. The <i>Secure VoIP</i> licence valid right across the system is also required.

## Reserving audio channels

The allocation of audio channels between voice mail, Auto Attendant and call recording is set under *Reservation audio channels* in the AMS Configuration Manager. An audio channel for Auto Attendant is always used in cases where an incoming call results in greetings being played back from mailboxes which have been assigned an Auto Attendant profile. In all other cases one audio channel is used for voice mail in connection with the voice mail system. Audio channels for call recording are used exclusively for the manual or automatic recording of phone calls.

**Tab. 17 Reserving audio channels**

<b>Parameter</b>	<b>Explanation</b>
<i>Available audio channels</i>	Maximum available audio channels on this node. This value depends on the DSP configuration under CM_2.1.3.
<i>Reserved for voice mail<sup>1)</sup></i>	Number of audio channels on this node that can be used exclusively for voice mail.

Parameter	Explanation
<i>Reserved for Auto Attendant</i>	Number of audio channels on this node that can be used exclusively for Auto Attendant.
<i>Reserved for call recording</i> <sup>1)</sup>	Number of audio channels on this node that can be used exclusively for call recording.
<i>Not reserved/sharable</i>	Number of audio channels on this node that can be used for voice mail, Auto Attendant or call recording, depending on where they happen to be required.

<sup>1)</sup> Note for *Voice mail mode = Expanded (G.729 only)*: For each audio channel, reserved for call recording, the number of possible audio channels reserved for voice mail is reduced by 3. The following combinations Voice mail / Call recording are possible: 12/0, 9/1 and 6/2.

No voice channels are reserved after a first start and they can be used for voice mail, Auto Attendant or call recording.

## Voice-mail system modes of operation

The voice-mail system mode of operation is set in the AMS Configuration Manager using the *Voice mail mode* parameter. The configured mode is always valid for the entire node.

**Tab. 18 Voice-mail system modes of operation**

<i>Voice mail mode</i>	Explanation	Licences
<i>Normal (G.711 or G.729)</i>	The <i>Normal (G.711 or G.729)</i> hybrid mode handles both audio formats while the number of voice channels per node is restricted to 4.	Two voice mail channels are available with the <i>Enterprise Voice Mail</i> licence. Each additional voice mail channel requires an additional <i>Audio Record &amp; Play Channels</i> licence.
<i>Expanded (G.729 only)</i>	In the <i>Expanded (G.729 only)</i> mode there are more voice channels available per node than in hybrid mode. However the quality of the audio data is somewhat poorer as a result of the compression.	Two voice mail channels are available with the <i>Enterprise Voice Mail</i> licence. Each additional voice mail channel requires an additional <i>Audio Record &amp; Play Channels</i> licence.

## Configuration of DSP chips

The assignable functions for each DSP chip are specified in the AMS Configuration Manager in the *DSP configuration*. The DSP modules provide additional functions as indicated in the following table. All the possible combinations are listed, with the maximum number of voice channels.

**Tab. 19 Max. number of voice channels per DSP chip on SM-DSPX1 or SM-DSPX2**

DECT	VoIP <sup>1)</sup>	FoIP	Audio <sup>1)</sup>	GSM <sup>1)</sup>	Remarks
8			2		
8				8	
6			4		
6			2	8	
4			4/6	8	6 channels if <i>Voice mail mode = Expanded (G.729 only)</i>
4			8		Only if <i>Voice mail mode = Expanded (G.729 only)</i>
4	2		2	8	
	5...8				Depends on the parameter <i>VoIP mode</i> : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>G.711</i>: 8 channels</li> <li>• <i>Secure G.711</i>: 7 channels</li> <li>• <i>G.711/G.729</i>: 6 channels</li> <li>• <i>Secure G.711/G.729</i>: 5 channels</li> </ul>
	4		4		Only for <i>VoIP mode = G.711</i> or <i>G.711/G.729</i>
	4		2	8	Only for <i>VoIP mode = G.711</i> or <i>G.711/G.729</i>
	3	1/2			1 channel for Aastra 415 2 channels for Aastra 430
			12	8	Only if <i>Voice mail mode = Expanded (G.729 only)</i>

<sup>1)</sup> Licence(s) required (see also "Licences", page 54).

**Tab. 20 Max. number of voice channels per DSP chip on SM-DSP1<sup>1)</sup> or SM-DSP2<sup>1)</sup>**

DECT	VoIP <sup>1)</sup>	FoIP	Audio <sup>1)</sup>	GSM <sup>1)</sup>	Remarks
8				8	
6			2	8	
4			4/6	8	6 channels if <i>Voice mail mode = Expanded (G.729 only)</i>
4			8		Only if <i>Voice mail mode = Expanded (G.729 only)</i>
	4/8				4 channels if <i>VoIP mode = G.711/G.729</i> 8 channels if <i>VoIP mode = G.711</i>
	2		4		
			12	8	Only if <i>Voice mail mode = Expanded (G.729 only)</i>
		1/2			1 channel for Aastra 415 2 channels for Aastra 430

<sup>1)</sup> Licences required (see also "Licences", page 54).



## Notes

- To be able to configure VoIP channels on the DSP chip of a DSP module, make sure the *VoIP mode* parameter is configured either to *G.711* or to *G.711/G.729*. The setting is valid for all the DSP chips of a node. For *VoIP mode = G.711* the following applies:

<sup>1)</sup> Although no longer available, the module is still supported.

- Two G.711 VoIP channels per system can be used without a licence.
- The G.711 VoIP channels of the mainboard can be combined with G.711 VoIP channels of DSP modules.
- If audio channels are configured and licensed, the two basic audio channels that can be used without a licence are redundant (see [Tab. 13](#)).
- Audio channels and FoIP channels can only be configured on one DSP chip per node.
- The *Modem* function is used for remote maintenance via an analogue modem and can only be configured on the mainboard's DSP.
- The system has to be restarted for the configuration changes of the DSP to take effect.
- After a first start all the DSP chips are configured on *DECT*.

### 3.3.2 Interface cards

Interface cards can be assigned to three categories:

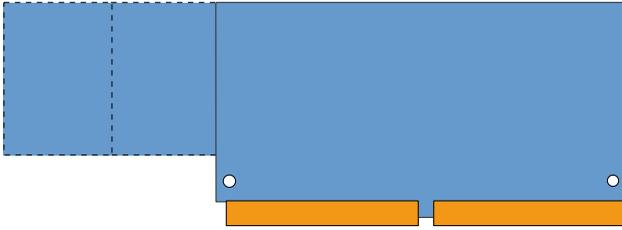
- **Trunk cards**  
These cards provide interfaces for connection to public dial-up networks or for networking systems to create a private telephony network.
- **Terminal cards**  
These cards provide interfaces for connecting digital and analogue voice and data terminals.
- **Options cards**  
This category comprises the ODAB card, the interfaces for connecting a door intercom, for controlling external devices, and for switching over internal switch groups.

On some cards some of the interfaces are configurable (BRI-S/T). This means that these cards cannot be clearly assigned to any particular category. They are listed both among the trunk cards and the terminal cards.

Interface cards are fitted into slots IC1...IC4 (see [Fig. 7](#)).

The interfaces are routed to the front panel using the Wiring Adapters (see "[Wiring Adapter](#)", page 49).

The length varies depending on the type of interface card. For precise dimensions see the Chapter "[Technical Data](#)", page 232.



**Fig. 10** Design of the interface cards

## 3.3.2.1 Trunk cards

The trunk cards contain interfaces for connection to the analogue public network (PSTN), the digital public network (ISDN) or for networking systems to create a private telephony network (PISN). The trunk cards can be used and operated on any slots for interface cards.

Some trunk cards contain both network interfaces (BRI-T) and terminal interfaces (BRI-S). On these cards the ratio of BRI-S interfaces to BRI-T interfaces is determined by the use and plug-in orientation of the Wiring Adapters (see "[Wiring Adapter](#)", page 88).



### Note

On the ESST terminal card the jumper must always be fitted in position T (see Fig. 25).

**Tab. 21** Trunk cards

Type	Network interfaces per card	Max. number of Aastra 415 cards	Max. number of Aastra 430 cards	Remarks
TIC-1PRI	1 × PRI	2	4	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Contains 30 B channels</li> <li>• 10 B channels can be used licence-free</li> </ul>
TIC-4TS	3 × BRI-S/T + 1 × BRI-T	2	4	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Three BRI-T interfaces configurable to BRI-S</li> <li>• One fixed BRI-T interface</li> </ul>
TIC-2TS	2 × BRI-S/T	2	4	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Both BRI-T interfaces configurable to BRI-S</li> </ul>
ESST <sup>1)2)</sup>	1 × BRI-S/T + 1 × BRI-S	2	4	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• One BRI-T interface configurable to BRI-S, one fixed BRI-S interface</li> <li>• The jumper on this card must always be fitted to position T.</li> </ul>
TIC-4AB	4 × FXO	1	2	
TIC-2AB	2 × FXO	2	4	
EAAAB2 <sup>2)</sup>	2 × FXO	2	4	

<sup>1)</sup> Cards with hardware version "-2" only. The ESST-1 card is not operational in Aastra 415/430.

<sup>2)</sup> Although no longer available, the card is still supported.

### 3.3.2.2 Terminal cards

Terminal cards are used for connecting digital and analogue voice and data terminals such as:

FXS cards are an exception. Their analogue interfaces are multifunctional. In addition they provide interfaces for controlling external devices and switching over internal switch groups. Depending on the terminal or function, the interfaces are configured individually and switched over internally accordingly (see "[Multifunctional FXS interfaces](#)", page 117).

Terminals to ETSI standard are connected via a number of cards. The cards contain both terminal interfaces (BRI-S) and network interfaces (BRI-T). On these cards the ratio of BRI-S interfaces to BRI-T interfaces is determined by the type and plug-in orientation of the Wiring Adapters (see "[Wiring Adapter](#)", page 88).



#### Note

On the ESST terminal card the jumper must always be fitted in position T (see [Fig. 25](#)).

Tab. 22 Terminal cards

Type	Terminal interfaces per card	Max. number of Aastra 415 cards	Max. number of Aastra 430 cards	Remarks
EADP4	4 × DSI	2	4	
EAD4V <sup>1)</sup>	4 × DSI	2	4	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Voice mail functionality of the card cannot be used</li> <li>• Cannot be fitted to slot IC4 on Aastra 430</li> </ul>
EAD4C <sup>1)</sup>	4 × DSI	2	4	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Announcement service functionality of the card cannot be used</li> <li>• Cannot be fitted to slot IC4 on Aastra 430</li> </ul>
ETAB4	4 × FXS	2	4	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Interfaces individually configurable</li> </ul>
TIC-4TS	3 × BRI-S/T 1 × BRI-T	2	4	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Three BRI-S interfaces configurable to BRI-T</li> <li>• One fixed BRI-T interface</li> </ul>
TIC-2TS	2 × BRI-S/T	2	4	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Both interfaces configurable to BRI-T</li> </ul>
ESST <sup>1)2)</sup>	1 × BRI-S/T 1 × BRI-S	2	4	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• One BRI-S interface configurable to BRI-T, one fixed BRI-S interface</li> <li>• The jumper on this card must always be fitted to position T.</li> </ul>

<sup>1)</sup> Although no longer available, the card is still supported.

<sup>2)</sup> Cards with hardware version "-2" only. The ESST-1 card is not operational in Aastra 415/430.

## 3.3.2.3 Option card

The ODAB options card contains control outputs, control inputs and an analogue terminal circuit for connecting a door intercom (TFE). The I/Os of the options card are partly configurable and can be used for the following purposes:

- The control outputs are used to switch any external devices or equipment. Any authorized user can operate the control outputs.
- Floating contacts are connected to the control inputs. This means that the connected control inputs can control switch group positions.
- Connection of a door intercom (TFE):
  - Bell input, which can be configured to any internal destination depending on the position of a switch group.
  - Door intercom system, which can be dialled using a separate number and operated via a phone by any authorized user.
  - Door opener, which can be activated via a phone by any authorized user.
  - Input for feeding the voice path (switching the door intercom on/off).

Tab. 23 Options card

Type	Control outputs or control inputs	Analogue terminal circuit for connecting a door intercom	Max. number of Aastra 415 cards	Max. number of Aastra 430 cards
ODAB	4 <sup>1)</sup>	1	1	2

<sup>1)</sup> 1 control output or 1 control input is available in the configuration as a door intercom. If the option card is used for other purposes, 2 control outputs and 2 control inputs can be used.



### Note

If the options card is used to connect a door intercom, it must be fitted to slot IC2 (Aastra 415) or slot IC4 (Aastra 430). This means that only one options card can be used for this purpose on each communication server. If using control outputs and control inputs only, use the slots IC1 slots (Aastra 415) or IC1, 2 and 3 (Aastra 430).

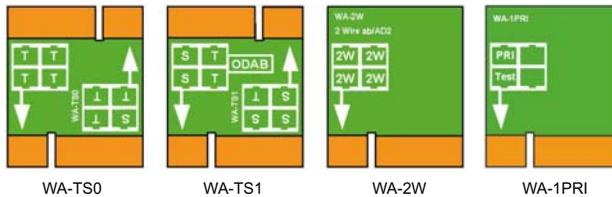


### Aastra Intelligent Net:

A total of 22 ODAB options cards can be used in an AIN with Aastra 430 as Master. However the maximum number of cards per communication server has to be taken into account. An authorized user has the possibility of operating all the door openers, door intercom system and control outputs in an AIN. One of the switch groups 1...20 can be switched over using the switch group interface on the options cards.

### 3.3.3 Wiring Adapter

The wiring adapters route the interfaces of the various interface cards with the right connection diagram to the RJ45 sockets on the front panel. The adapters are fitted to WA1...WA4 sockets.



**Fig. 11** Types of wiring adapters

There are four types of wiring adapters, of which two (WA-TS0 and WA-TS1) have different plug-in orientations. This determines the ratio of BRI-S interfaces to BRI-T interfaces.



#### Note

A configuration with wiring adapter is mandatory. An incorrect or missing configuration generates the corresponding error display on the LED display (F1...F4).

**Tab. 24** Wiring Adapter

Type	Use with...	Remarks
WA-TS0	TIC-4TS, TIC-2TS, ESST <sup>1)</sup>	Included in the equipment supplied with TIC-4TS and TIC-2TS
WA-TS1	TIC-4TS, TIC-2TS, ESST <sup>1)</sup> , ODAB	Included in the equipment supplied with ODAB
WA-2W	Mainboard interfaces, TIC-4AB, TIC-2AB, ETAB4, EAAB2, EADP4, EAD4C, EAD4V	Included in the equipment supplied with TIC-4AB, TIC-2AB, ETAB4 and EADP4 (with ETAB4 and EADP4 only with order variant Aastra 415/430).
WA-1PRI	TIC-1PRI	Included in the equipment supplied with TIC-1PRI

<sup>1)</sup> On the ESST terminal card the jumper must always be fitted in position T (see Fig. 25).

The assignment to the RJ45 sockets depending on the Wiring Adapters is shown in Tab. 33.

## 3.4 System capacity

System capacities are defined on the one hand by the existing hardware with its expansion possibilities and on the other by the limits set in the software. The software limits can be partly expandable by licences.

### 3.4.1 System capacity

The number of slots, interface cards and system modules per communication server have already been mentioned in the previous chapters and are not listed separately in this chapter.

**Tab. 25 General system capacity**

Max. number...	Aastra 415	Aastra 430	AIN with Aastra 430 as Master
Nodes in a transparent network (AIN)	–	–	11
Nodes with SIP networking	100	100	–
User	10 <sup>1)</sup>	50 <sup>2)</sup>	100
Terminals per user <sup>3)</sup>	16	16	16
Simultaneous connections			
• Without IP and without DECT (internal / external)	10 <sup>4)</sup>	30	50
• IP – not IP (internal / external)	8	18	50
• IP – IP (interne)	6 <sup>4)</sup>	25 <sup>4)</sup>	50
• IP – IP via SIP access channels (external)	16	32	32
• DECT – not DECT (internal / external)	10 <sup>4)</sup>	20	per node
• DECT – DECT (internal)	5 <sup>4)</sup>	20	per node
Voice channels VoIP G.711 / G.729 (Standard Media Switch) <sup>5)</sup>	8	18	per node
Voice channels (call recording)	2	2	per node
Voice channels G.711 or G.729 / G.729 only (Enterprise voice mail, Auto Attendant and call recording total)	4 / 12	4 / 12	per node
Voice channels (FoIP, T.38)	1	2	per node
Trunk groups	200	200	200
Trunk groups in route	8	8	8
Network interfaces per trunk group	8	8	8
Routes	134	134	134
B Channel Groups	200	200	200
SIP Provider	10	10	10
SIP user account	500	500	500
Direct Dialling Plans	10	10	10
Total DDI numbers	500	500	500
Call Distribution Elements	500	500	500
User groups	21	21	21

Max. number...	Aastra 415	Aastra 430	AIN with Aastra 430 as Master
Members per user group with global call distribution	16	16	16
Members per user group without global call distribution	20	100	100
Abbreviated dialling numbers + PISN users	1500	1500	1500
Line keys per key telephone	39	39	39
Busy lamp fields for SIP system phones	30	30	30
Switch Groups	20	20	20
Positions per switch group	3	3	3
Hotline destinations	20	20	20
Emergency number destinations	50	50	50
Emergency numbers	10	10	10
Allocations of external call numbers to internal call numbers	50	300	300
External digit barring	8	8	8
Internal digit barring	8	8	8
Predefined text messages	16	16	16
Announcement / message groups	8	8	8
User per announcement / message group	16	16	16
Data service tables	8	8	8
User accounts for User Access Control	25	8	8
Authorization profiles for user accounts	25	25	25
Log entries per user account	20	20	20
First-party CTI users via LAN	10	32	32
Third-party CTI interfaces	1	1	1
Third-Party CTI Interface (Basic, Standard)	10	50	100
Groups, Agents (Call Centre)	10	30	50
Mailboxes with Basic or Enterprise voice mail system	20	100	100
Greetings per mailbox	3	3	3
Profiles per mailbox for Auto Attendant	3	3	3
Call data memory internal (number of records)	300	300	300
Phonebook entries	8000	8000	8000
Call list entries	8000	8000	8000
Freely configurable keys	4000	4000	4000
Busy lamp field buttons on Aastra SIP phones in total	200	200	200
Busy lamp field buttons per Aastra SIP phone	50	50	50
Same users on busy lamp field buttons on Aastra SIP phones	10	10	10
Expansion key modules on DSI terminals	30 <sup>4)</sup>	60	100
Expansion key modules on IP system phones	30 <sup>4)</sup>	60	100
Expansion key modules Aastra M670i, Aastra M675i	30 <sup>4)</sup>	60	100
Alpha keyboard (AKB)	10	40	100

<sup>1)</sup> Up to 20 users are possible with virtual terminals and integrated mobile phones.

- 2) Up to 100 users are possible with virtual terminals and integrated mobile phones.
- 3) only 1 operator console each, DECT cordless phone, Aastra 2380ip
- 4) Limited by the maximum number of terminals
- 5) In the Secure VoIP modes the maximum values cannot be achieved with the selection i the DSP settings:  
 Aastra 415: VoIP mode *Secure G.711*:  $1 \times 7 = 7$  channels, VoIP mode *Secure G.711/G.729*:  $1 \times 5 = 5$  channels.  
 Aastra 430: VoIP mode *Secure G.711*:  $2 \times 7 = 14$  channels, VoIP mode *Secure G.711/G.729*:  $3 \times 5 = 5$  channels.

### 3.4.2 Terminals

**Tab. 26 Maximum number of terminals per system and interface**

Interface	Terminal type	Terminal	Aastra 415	Aastra 430	AIN with 430 as Master	per interface
Miscellaneous	Terminals (including virtual terminals and integrated mobile phones)		20	100	100	
	Terminals (excluding virtual terminals and integrated mobile phones)		12 <sup>1)</sup>	50	100	
DSI	Terminals on DSI interfaces (total)		10	40	100	
	Digital system phones	Aastra 5360 Aastra 5361 Aastra 5370 Aastra 5380 Office 10 Office 25 Office 35 Office 45	10	40	100	2
	Operator consoles / operator applications	Aastra 5380 Aastra 1560 Office 45 Office 1560	4	8	16	2
	Cordless System	SB-4+ radio unit	10	20	32	1
	Cordless System	SB-8 / SB-8ANT radio units	5	10	32	2)
DECT	Cordless phones	Aastra 610d Aastra 620d Aastra 630d Office 135 Office 160 GAP terminals	10	50	100	
LAN	Terminals on LAN interfaces (total)		12 <sup>1)</sup>	50	100	
	IP terminals	Aastra 2380ip Aastra 5360ip Aastra 5361ip Aastra 5370ip Aastra 5380ip	12	50	100	

Interface	Terminal type	Terminal	Aastra 415	Aastra 430	AIN with 430 as Master	per interface
	IP operator consoles / IP operator applications	Aastra 5380ip Aastra 1560ip Office 1560IP	4	8	16	
	AastraSIP terminals	Aastra 6730i Aastra 6731i Aastra 6735i <sup>3)</sup> Aastra 6737i <sup>3)</sup> Aastra 6753i Aastra 6755i Aastra 6757i Aastra 6739i Aastra 8000i <sup>3)</sup>	10	50	100	
	Standard SIP terminals		10	50	100	
-	Virtual terminals		20	100	100	
	Integrated mobile phones (with or without AMC)		20	100	100	
	Integrated mobile phones with AMCC30/AMCC125		10/10	30/50	30/100	
BRI-S	Terminals on DSI-S interfaces (total)		10	50	100	8 <sup>4)</sup>
	Terminals as per ETSI standard		10	50	100	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ISDN terminals</li> <li>• ISDN PC cards</li> <li>• ISDN LAN routers</li> <li>• ISDN Terminal Adapters</li> </ul>					
FXS	Terminals on FXS interfaces (total)		10	18	100	1
	Analogue, nationally approved terminals		10	18	100	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Pulse dialling (PUL)</li> <li>• Frequency dialling (DTMF)</li> <li>• Radio units for cordless phones</li> <li>• Door intercoms with DTMF control functions</li> <li>• Group 3 fax machines<sup>5)</sup></li> <li>• Answering machines</li> <li>• Modems</li> </ul>					
	External equipment can be switched via control outputs		1	1	1	
	External switches for controlling internal switch groups via control inputs		10	18	100	
	General Bell		1	1	1 per node	

<sup>1)</sup> Of which at least 2 are IP system phones

<sup>2)</sup> Operation on 2 DSI interfaces in each case

<sup>3)</sup> The release for this product is independent from R1.2 and will be made later.

<sup>4)</sup> Maximum of 2 simultaneous call connections.

<sup>5)</sup> Transmission with the T.38 protocol is recommended for Fax over IP. The corresponding DSP resources need to be allocated.

### 3.4.3 Terminal and network interfaces

Tab. 27 Terminal and network interfaces

Max. number...	Aastra 415	Aastra 430	AIN with Aastra 430 as Master
Ethernet interfaces	2	2	per node
Terminal interfaces, total (DSI, FXS, BRI-S)	12	22	100
DSI terminal interfaces	10 <sup>1)</sup>	20 <sup>1)</sup>	100
Analogue terminal interfaces FXS	10 <sup>1)</sup>	18 <sup>1)</sup>	100
BRI-S terminal interfaces	6 <sup>1)</sup>	12 <sup>1)</sup>	64
Door intercom (with ODAB card)	1	1	11
Network interfaces, total (FXO, BRI-T, PRI, BRI-Sexternal)	4	8	20
Analogue network interfaces FXO	4	8	20
Basic rate interfaces, total (BRI-T, BRI-Sexternal)	4	8	20
Primary rate interfaces PRI <sup>2)</sup>	2	4	20
SIP access	10	10	10
SIP access channels	16 <sup>3)</sup>	32 <sup>3)</sup>	32 <sup>3)</sup>

<sup>1)</sup> In maximum expansion network access is possible only via IP

<sup>2)</sup> 30 B channels per PRI network interface, of which 10 B channels each can be used without licence.

<sup>3)</sup> Licences required

### 3.4.4 Licences

Use of the call manager software requires a licence. Additional licences are required in order to use a number of enhanced functions and protocols, to enable voice channels or to operate certain terminals. The Aastra Plan application automatically plans the necessary licences, which are then enabled on the communication server using a licence code.

The licence code (LIC) contains all the enabled licences. When you purchase a new licence from your authorized dealer, you obtain a new licence code in return.

You enter it under CM\_1.2\_ *Licence code* in AMS and save it in the communication server.

Available licences:

- *Software Subscription*

Updating to a new software release requires a licence. The Software Subscription licence entitles you to upgrade the communication server to a new software level for a specific period. It is the prerequisite for being able to purchase an update licence (*Software Release* licence) for a particular software version.

Without a valid *Software Release* licence you can update the communication server to a new software level, but after four hours of operating time it will switch over to the restricted operating mode (see "[Restricted operating mode](#)", page 64). The communication server will switch back to normal operation as soon as you enter a licence code that comprises the *Software Release* licence. It is not necessary to restart the communication server.



**Note:**

The purchase of a new communication server also includes the *Software Subscription* licence. The licence has to be activated with the aid of the EID via the Aastra 400 activation portal on the extranet (partner login required). The licence code issued as a result contains the appropriate *Software Release* licence (and any other licences you may have acquired).



**Aastra Intelligent Net**

In an AIN a valid *Software Release* licence is required at all the nodes in order to update to a new software release for the communication server.

- *QSIG Networking Channels*

These licences are used to implement a private leased-line network with QSIG by enabling a specific number of simultaneously outgoing QSIG channels. Two licence levels are available (see [Tab. 28](#)).

- *CTI First Party via LAN*

This basic licence enables the CTI basic functions via Ethernet interface (e.g. for using a PC dial help) for a specific number of users (see "[System capacity](#)", page 50). It cannot be combined with CTI third-party licences.

- *ATAS Interface / ATASpro Interface*

With ATAS licences external alarm and messaging sources can be connected via the Ethernet interface. The licences also offer additional possibilities compared with ATPCx (e.g. displaying the Fox menu on system phones and triggering an alarm with the Redkey).

The ATASpro Interface licence can also be used to determine the position of users of Aastra DECT cordless phones, which can be visualized with the appropriate applications.



**Note:**

If you use the Open Interfaces Platform, OIP takes the licences from the communication server. So always acquire these licences for the communication server so you can use ATAS even without OIP.

- **Advanced Messaging**  
Enables the SMPP protocol to be used for integrating an SMS server and 9d cordless phones to be logged on as system phones (Ascom Wireless Solutions products). User-friendly messaging systems can then be implemented.  
Note: This licence is not available for Aastra 415.
- **SMPP**  
This licence allows the use of the SMPP protocol. It is visible only in AMS (not on the licence server). The licence cannot be purchased individually but is part of the *Advanced Messaging* licence.
- **Basic Aastra Intelligent Net**  
This licence allows an Aastra Intelligent Net to be set up and operated with one Master and one satellite.  
Note: This licence is not available for Aastra 415.
- **Aastra Intelligent Net Satellites**  
An upgrade licence for each additional satellite is required to integrate more than one satellite in an Aastra Intelligent Net. An existing basic AIN licence has to be in place already.  
Note: This licence is not available for Aastra 415.
- **Aastra SIP Terminals**  
To operate Aastra SIP terminals of the Aastra 6700i series, for Aastra Blustar™ 8000i Media Phone, for cordless terminals logged on via Aastra SIP DECT or Aastra SIP WLAN base stations, and for SIP users for the TWP application (Telephony Web Portal), one licence is required per terminal or user. The licences are needed when registering the terminals or the user on the system. Use is not possible if *SIP Terminals* licences are missing.
- **Aastra Video Terminals**  
In addition to the *Aastra SIP Terminals* licence you need to purchase also an *Aastra Video Terminals* licence in order to use the video functionality of an Aastra Blustar™ 8000i Media Phone. Use is not possible if *Video Terminals* licences are missing.
- **SIP Terminals**  
One licence is required per terminal to operate standard SIP terminals. The licences are needed when registering the terminals on the system and can be used even if *Aastra SIP Terminals* licences are missing.
- **Video Terminals**  
To be able to use the video functionality of a standard SIP video terminal you need to acquire a Video Terminals licence in addition to a *SIP Terminals* licence. The licences can also be used if the *Aastra Video Terminals* licences are missing.

- *SIP Access Channels*

The connection of the system to a SIP service provider or the networking of the systems via SIP requires one licence per channel.



### **Aastra Intelligent Net**

In an AIN all the SIP licences are always acquired for the Master. The number of licences determines the maximum number of simultaneously active voice channels, regardless of the nodes on which they are currently being used. Requirement: The DSP resources on each node must be available and allocated accordingly.

- *VoIP Channels for Standard Media Switch*

This licence enables the conversion of voice channels for VoIP - non VoIP connections and is used for IP terminals, SIP terminals, SIP access channels or to operate an Aastra Intelligent Net. High voice data compression is possible with the standard VoIP channels (G.729). One voice channel is activated with each licence.



### **Note:**

Theoretically there are no VoIP channel licences in a pure VoIP environment (only IP/SIP phones on the system and connection to the public network via an SIP provider). However, as soon as voice mail functions, the announcement service or music on hold is used, VoIP channel licences are required as the use of these functions entails a conversion of the voice data.



### **Aastra Intelligent Net**

In an AIN the licence can also be used for the connections between the nodes. Two VoIP channel licences are required for each node connection. The licences are always acquired for the Master. The number of licences determines the maximum number of simultaneously active conversions, regardless of the nodes on which they are currently being used. Requirement: The DSP resources on each node must be available and allocated accordingly.

- *Mobile Phone Extension*

With this licence it is possible to integrate mobile phones into the communication system. One licence has to be purchased for each mobile phone.



### **Note:**

The *AMC User* licence is also required on the mobile phone to enable the easy integration of mobile phones with Aastra Mobile Client. This licence can be purchased on the AMC licensing portal.

- **AMC Extension**

With this licence mobile phones can be integrated into the communication system together with an Aastra Mobile Client Controller. The AMC Controller allows mobile users to move back and forth between the internal WLAN coverage and the mobile radio network without the call being interrupted.



**Note:**

This integration also requires *AMC User* and *AMC Plus Pack* licences on the mobile phone. These licences can be purchased on the AMC licensing portal.

- **Aastra 5300ip Phones**

One licence per terminal is required to operate the IP system phones Aastra 5360ip, Aastra 5361ip, Aastra 5370ip and Aastra 5380ip. The licences are needed to register the terminals on the system. If the required licences are missing, the relevant event message is output on the system.

- **Aastra 2380ip Softphones**

One licence per terminal is required to operate the IP softphones Aastra 2380ip. The licences are needed to register the terminals on the system.

- **Analogue Modem**

This licence allows remote maintenance of an Aastra 415/430 using an analogue modem. For this the *Modem* function must be allocated to the mainboard DSP. Transmitting event messages via an analogue modem is also possible.



**Aastra Intelligent Net**

In an AIN the licence is always acquired on the Master. The licence allows the remote maintenance of the AIN via any Aastra 415/430 node.

Note: The Master can also be an Aastra 470.

- **B-Channels on PRI Cards**

In addition to the 10 B channels that can be used without a licence on each PRI interface card, one extra B channel is enabled per licence. A maximum of 30 B channels are possible per PRI interface. Unlike the B channels that can be used without a licence and which are restricted to the relevant PRI interface card, the licensed B channels can be used on any PRI interface card.



**Aastra Intelligent Net**

In an AIN the licence is always acquired on the Master. For each licence an additional B channel is available on a PRI interface card of any node, depending on where the B channel is currently being used.

- **TWP Connection**

This licence is used to connect to the Telephony Web Portal (TWP). While it is visible in AMS and on the licence server, it cannot be deleted; instead it is automatically enabled whenever user-based TWP licences are available.

- **Enterprise Voice Mail**

If the functionality of the basic voice mail system is insufficient, the voice mail system can be expanded. This licence provides two audio channels for recording or playing back audio data for voice mail. Auto Attendant or call recording. The licence also increases voice memory capacity and enables email notification whenever new voice messages are received.



### Notes

- Additional audio channels require additional *Audio Record & Play Channels* licences. A licence is required to use the *Auto Attendant* function.
- In a VoIP environment VoIP channel licences are also required for converting the voice data when using the internal voice mail system.

- **Audio Record & Play Channels**

This licence enables an additional audio channel for recording or playing back audio data for voice mail, Auto Attendant or call recording. This licence can only be used in conjunction with the *Enterprise Voice Mail* licence.



### Aastra Intelligent Net

In an AIN the Enterprise Voice Mail and Audio Record & Play Channels licences are all acquired for the Master. The number of Audio Record & Play Channels licences determines the maximum number of simultaneously active audio channels, regardless of the nodes on which they are currently being used. Requirement: The DSP resources on each node must be available and allocated accordingly.

- **Auto Attendant**

This licence enables the use of the Auto Attendant function and is independent of the Enterprise Voice Mail licence. It means it can also be used in conjunction with basic voice mail.



### Note

In a VoIP environment VoIP channel licences are also required for converting the voice data when using the Auto Attendant.

- **Silent Intrusion**  
This licence is needed for the *Silent intrusion* feature, which is similar to the *Intrusion* feature. The difference is that the user intruded upon receives neither a visual nor an acoustic signal of the intrusion. The feature is used mainly in call centres. One licence is required per system.
- **Secure VoIP**  
This licence allows encrypted VoIP connections with the aid of SRTP (Secure Real-Time Transport Protocol) and TLS (Transport Layer Security).
- **CSTA Sessions**  
This licence allows third-party applications to monitor/check a terminal on the communication server using the CSTA protocol. If a terminal is monitored or checked by several applications or instances, one licence is required for each monitoring/check.
- **Hospitality Manager**  
This licence allows you to use the Aastra Hospitality Manager. The Aastra Hospitality Manager is a web-based application for receptionists in the hospitality sector. One licence is required per system.
- **Hospitality PMS Interface and Hospitality PMS Rooms**  
The *Hospitality PMS Interface* licence is used to connect the communication server to a hotel management system using the FIAS protocol. In addition one *Hospitality PMS Rooms* licence is required per room.

**Tab. 28 Overview of licences**

Licence	Licensed attributes	Without licence	With licence	Licences for networking
<i>Software Subscription</i>	Allows the communication server to be upgraded to a new software level.	unavailable	Enabled for a specific period of time from the date of purchase	per node
<i>Software Release</i>	Allows a particular software release to be operated	restricted <sup>1)</sup>	unrestricted	per node
<i>QSIG Networking Channels</i>	QSIG channels	0	per licence 4 or n QSIG channels (n limited by the system capacity)	per node
<i>CTI First Party via LAN</i>	First-party CTI clients with basic functions on Ethernet interface	0	enabled for a specific number of users (see "System capacity", page 50)	per node
<i>ATAS Interface</i>	Use of the ATAS interface	unavailable	enabled	per node
<i>ATASpro Interface</i>	Use of the ATASpro interface	unavailable	enabled	per node

Licence	Licensed attributes	Without licence	With licence	Licences for networking
<i>Advanced Messaging</i>	SMPP protocol for integration of an SMS server and registration of 9d cordless phones as system phones. (Includes licence SMPP)	unavailable	enabled	per node
<i>SMPP<sup>2)</sup></i>	SMPP protocol	unavailable	enabled	per node
<i>Basic Aastra Intelligent Net</i>	Operation of an AIN	unavailable	AIN with master and one satellite	Only on the Master
<i>Aastra Intelligent Net Satellites<sup>3)</sup></i>	Additional satellite in an AIN	0	1 additional satellite per licence	Only on the Master
<i>Aastra SIP Terminals</i>	Number of registered Aastra SIP terminals in AMS	0	1, 20 or 50 additional Aastra SIP terminals per licence	In the AIN, only on the Master; otherwise per node.
<i>Aastra Video Terminals</i>	Use of the video functionality of an Aastra SIP terminal	0	Additional licence for <i>Aastra SIP Terminals</i> . 1, 20 or 50 additional Aastra SIP terminals with video functionality per licence.	In the AIN, only on the Master; otherwise per node.
<i>SIP Terminals</i>	Number of registered standard SIP terminals in AMS	0	1 additional standard SIP terminal per licence	In the AIN, only on the Master; otherwise per node.
<i>Video Terminals</i>	Use of the video functionality of a standard SIP terminal	0	Additional licence for <i>SIP Terminals</i> . 1 additional standard SIP terminal with video functionality per licence.	In the AIN, only on the Master; otherwise per node.
<i>SIP Access Channels</i>	Simultaneously usable channels to an SIP service provider	0	Per licence 1 additional SIP access channel	In the AIN, only on the Master; otherwise per node.
<i>VoIP Channels for Standard Media Switch</i>	Conversion of voice channels for VoIP - non VoIP connections	0	Per licence 1 additional VoIP channel	In the AIN, only on the Master; otherwise per node.
<i>Mobile Phone Extensions</i>	Number of mobile phones opened in AMS	0	1 additional mobile phone per licence	In the AIN, only on the Master; otherwise per node.
<i>AMC Extensions</i>	Number of mobile phones opened in AMS with Aastra Mobile Client	0	1 additional mobile phone per licence and the possibility of activating an Aastra Mobile Client	In the AIN, only on the Master; otherwise per node.

## Expansion Stages and System Capacity

Licence	Licensed attributes	Without licence	With licence	Licences for networking
<i>Aastra 5300ip Phones</i>	Number of registered Aastra 5360ip, Aastra 5361ip, Aastra 5370ip and Aastra 5380ip IP system phones	0	1, 20 or 50 additional IP system phones per licence	In the AIN, only on the Master; otherwise per node.
<i>Aastra 2380ip Softphones</i>	Number of registered Aastra 2380ip IP soft-phones	0	per licence 1 additional IP softphone	In the AIN, only on the Master; otherwise per node.
<i>Analogue Modem</i>	Use of the modem functionality on an Aastra 415/430.	unavailable	enabled	In the AIN, only on the Master; otherwise per node.
<i>B-Channels on PRI Cards</i>	B channels that can be used simultaneously on the PRI interface card of an Aastra 415, Aastra 430 or Aastra 470.	10	Per licence 1 additional B- channel	In the AIN, only on the Master; otherwise per node.
<i>TWP Connection</i>	Connection to Telephony Web Portal (TWP)	unavailable	enabled	Licence is enabled when user-based TWP licences are available
<i>Enterprise Voice Mail</i>	Voice compression, expanded voice memory capacity, and e-mail notification whenever new voice messages are received.	unavailable	Enabled (including 2 audio channels for voice mail, Auto Attendant or call recording)	In the AIN, only on the Master; otherwise per node.
<i>Audio Record &amp; Play Channels</i>	Voice channels for recording or playing back audio data.	unavailable	per licence 1 additional audio channel for voice mail, Auto Attendant or call recording	In the AIN, only on the Master; otherwise per node.
<i>Auto Attendant</i>	Use of the Auto Attendant function	unavailable	enabled	In the AIN, only on the Master; otherwise per node.
<i>Silent Intrusion</i>	Use of the Silent intrusion feature	unavailable	enabled	In the AIN, only on the Master; otherwise per node.
<i>Secure VoIP</i>	Encrypted VoIP connections using SRTP and TLS.	unavailable	enabled	In the AIN, only on the Master; otherwise per node.

Licence	Licensed attributes	Without licence	With licence	Licences for networking
<i>CSTA Sessions</i>	Number of monitored terminals via the CSTA protocol.	0	per licence 1, 20 or 50 CSTA sessions	In the AIN, only on the Master; otherwise per node.
<i>Hospitality Manager</i>	Use of the Aastra Hospitality Manager	unavailable	enabled	In the AIN, only on the Master; otherwise per node.
<i>Hospitality PMS Interface</i>	Use of the PMS interface and therefore of the FIAS protocol.	unavailable	enabled	In the AIN, only on the Master; otherwise per node.
<i>Hospitality PMS Rooms</i>	Number of rooms when using the PMS interface.	0	per licence 1, 20 or 50 rooms	In the AIN, only on the Master; otherwise per node.

- 1) 4 hours after the new software has been uploaded, the communication server switches over to a restricted operating mode (see "Restricted operating mode", page 64).
- 2) This licence cannot be purchased separately; it is part of other licences
- 3) Upgrade to *Basic Aastra Intelligent Net* licence

All the licences are offered in separate licence packages. Depending on the sales channels the packages may differ from the licences in [Tab. 28](#). The systems ship out unlicensed. Back-licensing is not provided for. However, resetting to the factory setting is possible.



### Temporary offline licences

If the connection to the Master is interrupted in an AIN, the satellites restart in offline mode. The licences acquired on the Master are no longer visible to the satellites in offline mode. To ensure autonomous VoIP and QSIG traffic temporarily, the following licences are enabled in the satellites concerned for the duration of offline operation or for a maximum of two hours (the licences are not visible in AMS):

- *Enterprise Voice Mail*
- *QSIG Networking Channels*, unlimited
- *Aastra SIP Terminals*, unlimited
- *Aastra Video Terminals*, unlimited
- *SIP Terminals*, unlimited
- *Video Terminals*, unlimited
- *SIP Access Channels*, unlimited

- *VoIP Channels for Standard Media Switch, unlimited*
- *Mobile Phone Extension, unlimited*
- *Aastra 5300ip Phones, unlimited*
- *Aastra 2380ip Softphones, unlimited*
- *CSTA Sessions, unlimited*
- *Analogue Modem*

To ensure a longer-lasting offline operation the necessary licences must also be purchased for the satellites.

### Restricted operating mode

Without a valid *Software Release* licence the communication server switches over to a restricted operating mode 4 hours after each restart. The restriction concerns the following aspects:

Restricted operating features:

- No call information for incoming calls and during the call connection.
- Dialling by name is deactivated.
- Calling up functions using the menu or function keys is disabled (enquiry calls are not possible either).
- Team keys are disabled.
- Function codes are disabled (exception for remote maintenance on/off).
- Dialling from the PC and other CTI functions are not supported.

Restricted services and routing functions:

- Calls are not routed to integrated mobile phones.
- Call centre functions are out of service (no routing to ACD).
- Voice mail functions are out of service (no routing to voice mail).
- The announcement service is out of operation.



### Restrictions in an Aastra Intelligent Net

In an AIN, the satellites carry out a restart every four hours.

### Trial licences

Trial licences are available for some functions. This means that functions or features that require a licence can be used and tested, licence-free, for a period of 60 days. The trial licences are automatically enabled the first time a particular function is used and then listed in AMS in the licence overview, complete with the date on which they expire. This process can only be carried out for each function or feature. Thereafter a licence must be purchased.

Trial licences are available for the following functions:

- *QSIG Networking Channels*, unlimited
- *CTI First Party via LAN*
- *ATAS Interface*
- *ATASpro Interface*
- *SIP Access Channels*, unlimited
- *Aastra SIP Terminals*, unlimited
- *Aastra Video Terminals*, unlimited
- *SIP Terminals*, unlimited
- *Video Terminals*, unlimited
- *VoIP Channels for Standard Media Switch*, unlimited
- *Mobile Phone Extension*, unlimited
- *Aastra 5300ip Phones*, unlimited
- *Aastra 2380ip Softphones*, unlimited
- *Analogue Modem*
- *Enterprise Voice Mail*
- *Auto Attendant*
- *CSTA Sessions*, unlimited
- *Hospitality Manager*
- *Hospitality PMS Rooms*, unlimited

### OIP licences

OIP licences are managed by OIP itself. A detailed description of the OIP licences can be found in the System Manual Open Interfaces Platform.

## 3.4.5 Power supply capacity

The maximum number of terminals connected to the system can be limited by the supply power available for terminals. It is also important to take note of the maximum load per terminal interface.

### 3.4.5.1 Supply power available for terminals

The 40 VDC power supply required for the connected terminals is rated for the power requirements of a typical system configuration.

**Tab. 29 Power output of the 40 VDC power supply**

	<b>Aastra 415</b>	<b>Aastra 430</b>
Available power output	24 Watt	24 Watt

The number of permissible terminals per system depends on the power requirements of the individual terminals. To check the power requirements refer to [Tab. 30](#) for details of the average power requirements of the terminals.

The total power requirements of all connected terminals must not exceed the available power output of the power supply.



#### **Note**

The actually required power supply depends strongly on the call traffic, the wire diameter and the line length to the connected terminals. The values in the following table are average values under the following assumption:

- Phones traffic volume: Call Connection 38%, Ringing 2%
- SB-4+ radio unit: Active call connection on 2 channels
- SB-8 radio unit: Active call connection on 4 channels
- Background lighting Aastra 5380: 30% active
- LEDs on terminals and expansion key modules: 20% active.
- Wire diameter: 0.5 mm
- Line length: 200 m

The table below shows the average power requirements of the terminals for a line length of approx. 200 m and a wire diameter of 0.5 mm.

**Tab. 30 Average power requirements of terminals**

Terminals	Connection	Output P [mW]
Aastra 5360 <sup>1)</sup>	DSI-AD2 interface	280
Aastra 5361	DSI-AD2 interface	680
Aastra 5370	DSI-AD2 interface	680
Aastra 5380	DSI-AD2 interface	820
Aastra 5370, Aastra 5380 with power supply unit	DSI-AD2 interface	0
Expansion key module Aastra M530	Aastra 5370	110
Expansion key module Aastra M530	Aastra 5380	120
Expansion key module Aastra M535	Aastra 5370, Aastra 5380	0 <sup>2)</sup>
Radio unit without power supply unitSB-4+	DSI-AD2 interface	1500 <sup>3)</sup>
Radio unit without power supply unitSB-8	2 DSI-AD2 interfaces	1350 <sup>4)</sup>
Radio unit with power supply unit SB-4+/SB-8	1 or 2 DSI-AD2 interfaces	< 100
Office 10 <sup>1)</sup>	DSI-AD2 interface	340
Office 25 <sup>1)</sup>	DSI-AD2 interface	380
Office 35 <sup>1)</sup>	DSI-AD2 interface	280 <sup>5)</sup>
Office 45/45pro <sup>1)</sup>	DSI-AD2 interface	660 <sup>5)</sup>
Office 45pro with power supply unit <sup>1)</sup>	DSI-AD2 interface	< 10
Expansion key module (EKP) <sup>1)</sup>	Office 35, Office 45	80
Alphanumeric keyboard (AKB) <sup>1)</sup>	Office 35, Office 45	20
ISDN terminal	BRI-S interface	approx. 500 <sup>6)</sup>
Analogue terminals	FXS interface	approx. 500

<sup>1)</sup> Although no longer available, the phone is still supported.

<sup>2)</sup> An Aastra M535 always requires a power supply unit

<sup>3)</sup> The value applies to radio units with hardware version "-2". The value for hardware version "-1" is 300 mW lower.

<sup>4)</sup> The value applies to each interface and to radio units with hardware version "-2". The value per interface for radio units with hardware version "-1" is 150 mW lower.

<sup>5)</sup> The value applies to phones with hardware version "-2". The value for phones with hardware version "-1" is 60 mW lower.

<sup>6)</sup> The value depends greatly on the terminal type.



### Tip

With the planning application Aastra Plan the power supply available for terminals is checked automatically.

## Overload shutdown

If the rated power is exceeded the power supply is disconnected. It is restored after approx. 20 s.

If an overload occurs, reduce the required supply power (e.g. by powering DECT radio units and/or system phones locally).

### **3.4.5.2 Power supply per terminal interface**

The power supply per terminal interface is determined by the interface type. The interface load depends on the following variables:

- Terminals used incl. auxiliary devices
- Bus configuration
- Line length and conductor cross-section

For information on the calculations refer to ["Terminal interfaces"](#), page 105.

## 4 Installation

This Chapter tells you the ways in which Aastra 415/430 can be installed and the conditions to be observed. It also includes the mounting into a 19" rack, the correct way to connect the earthing, and the power supply. Other topics described in this Chapter comprise fitting with system modules, interface cards and the relevant Wiring Adapters. Finally the Chapter also describes the network- and terminal-side connection of the interfaces and the installation, powering and connection of system terminals.

### 4.1 System components

The figure below shows the components of the Aastra 415/430 communication server complete with mounting options.

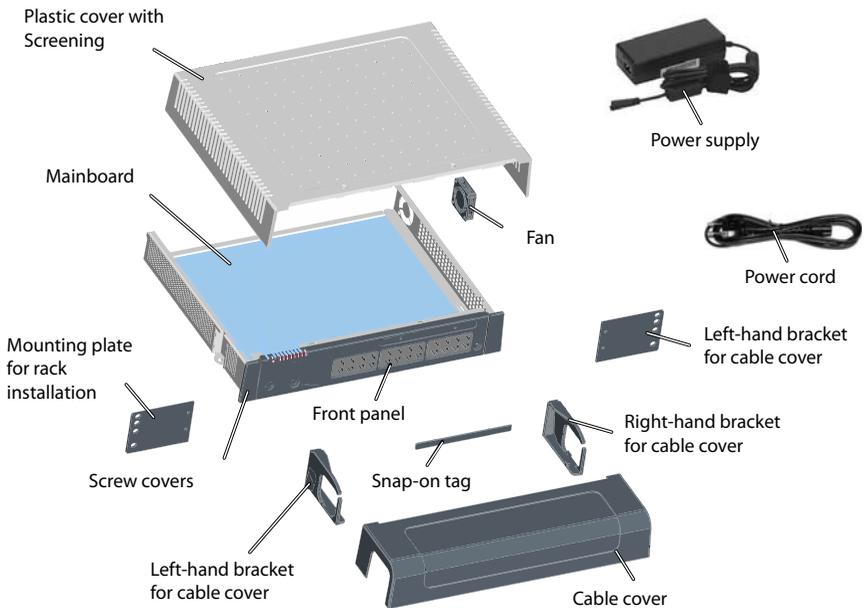


Fig. 12 System components with mounting options

### 4.2 Fitting the communication server

The Aastra 415/430 communication server is suitable for both wall and desktop installation as well as for mounting in a 19" rack. Different mounting sets are available in each case.

#### 4.2.1 Equipment supplied

The equipment supplied with the Aastra 415/430 includes:

- Aastra 415 or Aastra 430 communications server
- Set of screws for wall or desktop installation and earthing connection
- Snap-on tag
- Power supply
- Power cord
- Product information

#### 4.2.2 Mounting options

Aastra 415/430 includes all the materials required for wall or desktop installation. Additional rack installation sets are required for a 19" rack installation. These sets for Aastra 415 and Aastra 430 are different.

For wall mounting all the connecting cables can be concealed behind a cable cover. This set can be ordered as an option.

##### 4.2.2.1 Cable cover set for Aastra 415/430

Equipment supplied:

- Cable cover
- Left-hand bracket for cable cover
- Right-hand bracket for cable cover
- Screw set

### 4. 2. 2. 2 Rack-mounting set Astra 415

Equipment supplied:

- 2 mounting plates for rack installation
- Screw set

### 4. 2. 2. 3 Astra 430 rack-mounting set

Equipment supplied:

- 2 mounting plates for rack installation
- Screw set
- Fan

## 4. 2. 3 Location requirement

The following location requirements must be observed when positioning the communication server.



### Hazard

Failure to observe the location requirements can cause the communication server to overheat, damaging electrical components and/or the surrounding area.

An event message is generated if the heat dissipation is insufficient. If so, the appropriate measures must be taken immediately to improve the heat dissipation, e. g. by providing the required clearances, lowering the ambient temperature or installing the fan from the rack-mounting set (Astra 430 only).

**Tab. 31 Astra 415/430 Location requirements**

Heat radiation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Do not position in direct sunlight, near radiators or near other heating sources</li> </ul>
EMC	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Do not position in strong electromagnetic fields of radiation (e.g. near x-ray equipment, welding equipment or similar).</li> </ul>
Heat dissipation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Do not place any objects on top of the communication server.</li> <li>• Observe the clearance requirements for wall mounting and desktop installation (see <a href="#">Fig. 13</a> and <a href="#">Fig. 14</a>).</li> <li>• In a rack-mounted installation the space to the left and right between the communication server and the wall of the 19" rack must remain empty. The installation of a fan is also mandatory for the Astra 430.</li> </ul>
Environment	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Room temperature 5...45°C</li> <li>• Relative humidity 30...80%, non-condensing</li> </ul>

### 4. 2. 4 Safety regulations

Be sure to observe the following safety regulations before carrying out work inside a communication server:



#### Warning

Components, interface cards or system modules can be damaged by electrical voltage.

Always disconnect the communication server from the power supply before removing the housing cover.



#### Warning

Components can be damaged by electrostatic discharge when touched. Always touch the earthed metal case of the communication server before carrying out work inside the housing. This also applies to interface cards and system modules that are no longer packed inside the ESD protective wrapping.

### 4. 2. 5 Wall mounting

There are two possibilities for wall mounting. In the first variant the front panel faces right (see [Fig. 13](#)); in the second, it faces downwards (see [Fig. 14](#)). The wall-mounting option chosen will depend on the way the cables are routed. The LED display remains visible whatever the mounting position, even when the cable cover is fitted.



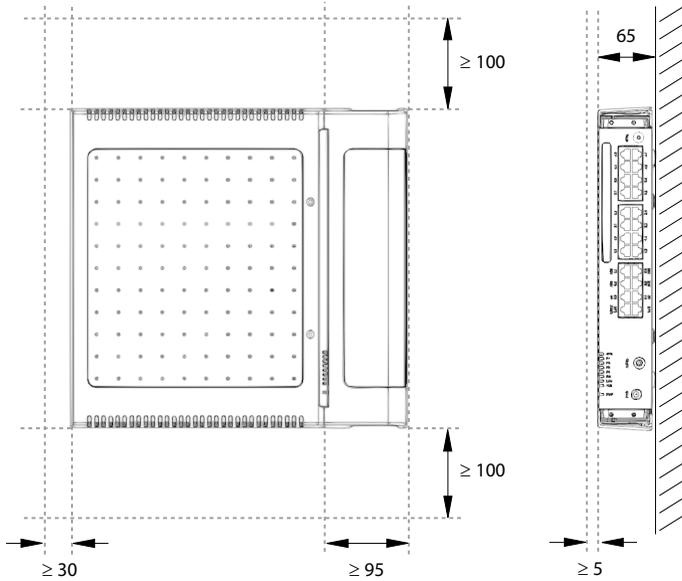
#### Warning

A wall-mounting option in which the front panel faces upwards or to the right is not permitted. Inadequate heat dissipation can damage the communication server.

#### 4. 2. 5. 1 Minimum distances

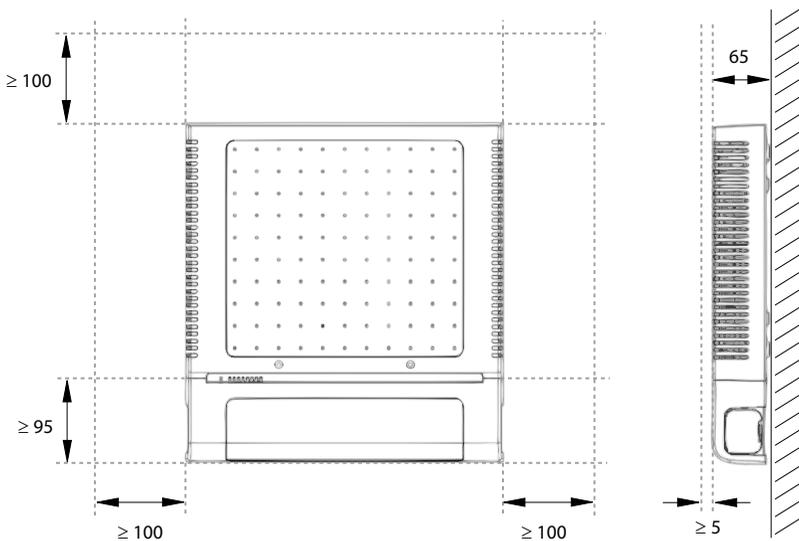
To ensure adequate heat dissipation, minimum distances need to be maintained with other objects such as cable ducts, cabinets or mobile objects. Maintaining minimum distances also allows the installation of the cable cover and the possibility of suspending the communication server into and out of the wall-mounted screws.

The two diagrams below illustrate the two wall-mounting possibilities.



All dimensions in mm

**Fig. 13** Minimum distances for wall mounting (front panel facing to the right)

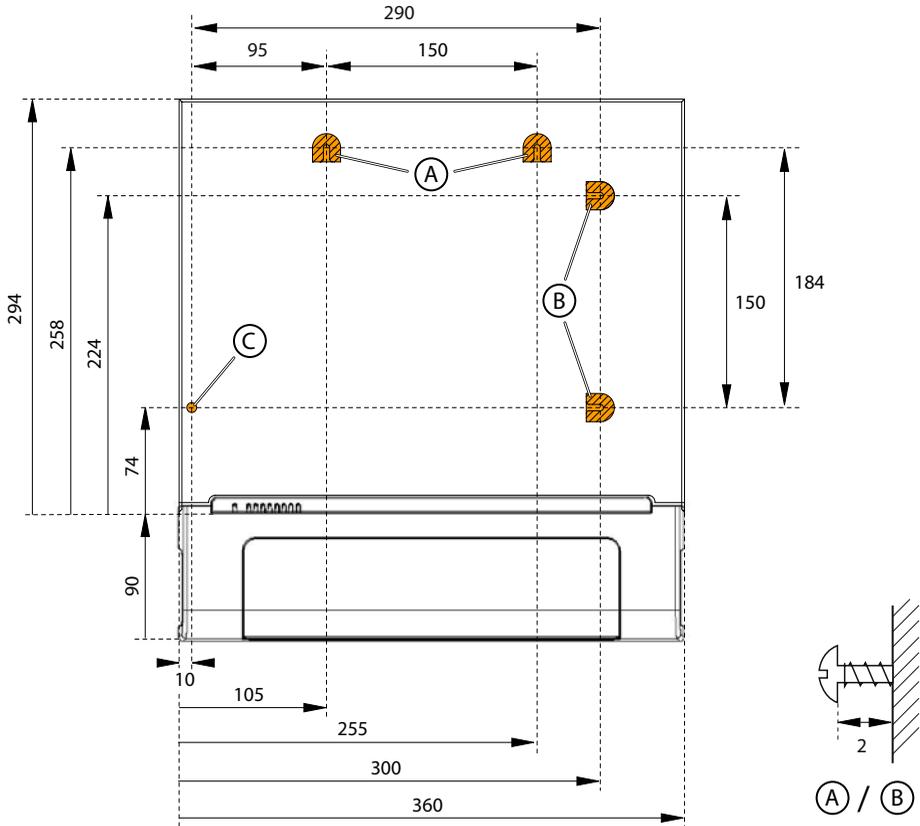


All dimensions in mm

**Fig. 14** Minimum distances for wall mounting (front panel facing downwards)

### 4.2.5.2 Drilling plan

The communication server is suspended into two premounted wall screws using the suspension points in the housing base. Depending on the type of mounting, these are the suspension points marked under position A or B on the drilling plan. The communication server is secured with a third screw to prevent it from being dislodged accidentally (position C).



All dimensions in mm

Fig. 15 Drilling plan for Aastra 415/430 wall mounting

### 4. 2. 5. 3 Drilling template

The packaging box of the communication server can also be used for marking out the drill holes. To do so it is best to detach the part of the inner packaging box that contains the drill holes.

Note: The holes on the cardboard box are not labelled.

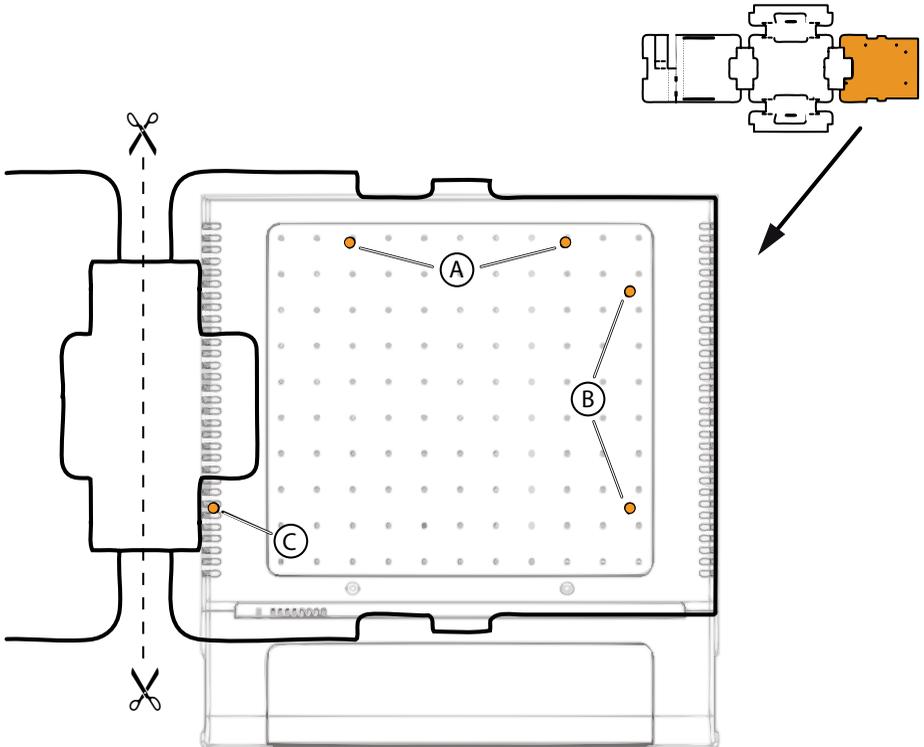


Fig. 16 Drilling template

### 4. 2. 5. 4 Wall-mounting procedure

Materials required:

- Screw set for wall/desktop installation
- 6 mm drill
- Screwdriver

To mount the communication server to the wall, proceed as follows:

1. Using the drill template or the instructions on the drill plan to mark out the three drill holes. Make sure you observe the minimum distances to other objects, walls or ceilings as shown in [Fig. 13](#) and [Fig. 14](#).
2. Drill the three dowel holes.
3. Insert the dowel plugs.
4. Screw in the two shorter upper dowel screws (position A or B). Observe the distance between the screw heads and the wall as shown in [Fig. 15](#).
5. Disconnect the communication server from the power supply.



#### **Warning**

Be sure to observe the "Safety regulations", page 72.

6. Remove the housing cover.
7. Connect the earthing (see "[Connecting the earthing wire](#)", page 82).
8. Suspend the housing of the communication server onto the screws.
9. To secure the communication server screw in the long lower dowel screw (position C).
10. Fit the housing cover.
11. Secure the snap-on tag to the front panel or to a suitable position on the housing cover. The holes in the housing cover are spaced in such a way that the snap-on tag can be secured both lengthways and crossways.
12. Reconnect the communication server to the power supply.

## 4.2.6 Desktop installation

To protect the cable connections the communication server can also be secured using three screws. The same drilling plan (see [Fig. 15](#)) and the same procedure apply as for wall mounting (see "[Wall-mounting procedure](#)", page 76).



### Warning

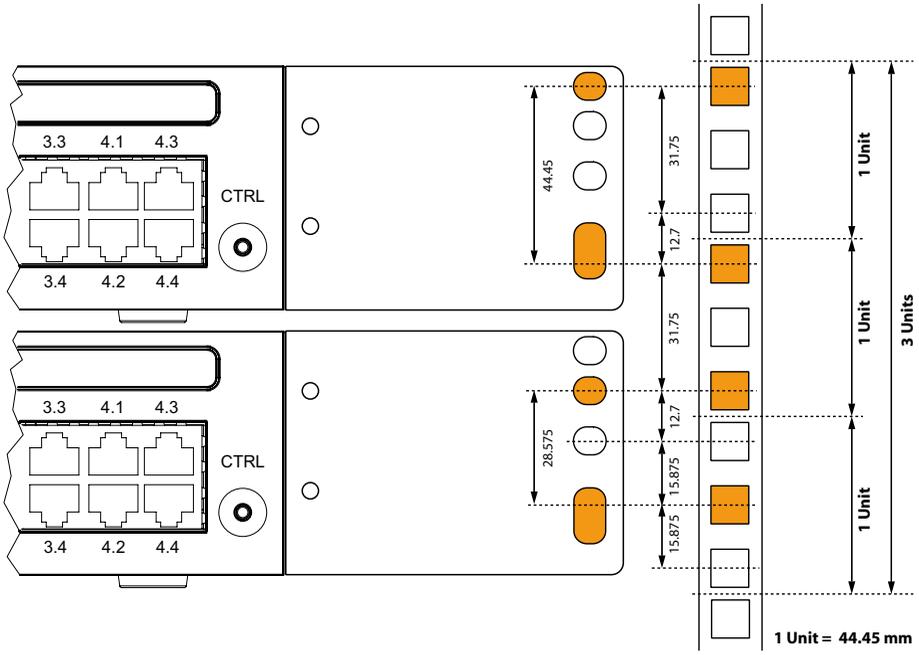
To ensure adequate heat dissipation make sure that no objects are placed on top of the communication server (see also "[Location requirement](#)", page 71). Minimum distances must also be observed as shown in [Fig. 13](#).

## 4.2.7 Rack-mounting

The rack-mounting set Aastra 415 or Aastra 430 allows the communication server to be installed horizontally into a 19" rack. Be sure to observe the following:

- The communication server takes up the space of 1.5 height units (units) inside the 19" rack. (1 unit corresponds to 44.45 mm).
- The holes in the mounting plates allow two communication servers to be placed directly above each other with a space requirement of three units. Different holes in the mounting plates are used for this purpose (see [Fig. 17](#)).
- The space on the left and right between the communication server and the panels of the 19" rack is for heat dissipation and must remain clear.
- The installation of a fan is mandatory whenever an Aastra 430 is rack-mounted; the fan is included in the Aastra 430 rack-mounting kit.

Note: The rack-mounting set always includes fastening screws for the fan. On the Aastra 415 these two screws are superfluous.



**Fig. 17** Placing two communication servers above each other inside a 19" rack

### 4. 2. 7. 1 Rack-mounting procedure

Materials required:

- Aastra 415 and Aastra 430 rack-mounting kit
- Screw set for wall/desktop installation
- Screwdriver

To rack-mount an Aastra 415/430 proceed as follows:

1. Pull off the screw covers on the left and right of the front panel.
2. Secure the mounting plates to the communication server using the M4 screws. Make sure the front panel and the mounting plate are aligned.
3. Disconnect the communication server from the power supply.



#### **Warning**

Be sure to observe the "Safety regulations", page 72.

4. Remove the housing cover.
5. Aastra 430 only:  
Install the fan (see "[Installing the fan](#)", page 80).
6. Connect the earthing (see "[Connecting the earthing wire](#)", page 82).
7. Fit the housing cover.
8. Secure the cage nuts in the appropriate positions in the rack's fastening rails (see [Fig. 17](#)).
9. Secure the communication server to the rack's fastening rails using the M6 screws, the plastic washers and the cage nuts.
10. Fasten the snap-on tag to the front panel.
11. Reconnect the communication server to the power supply.

## 4. 2. 7. 2 Installing the fan

Materials required:

- Fan from the Aastra 430 rack-mounting kit
- 2 screws from the Aastra 430 rack-mounting set
- Screwdriver

To install the fan proceed as follows:

1. Disconnect the communication server from the power supply.



### Warning

Be sure to observe the "Safety regulations", page 72.

2. Remove the housing cover.
3. Use the two screws to fit the fan to the inside of the housing. Take note of the arrows on the fan. They indicate the direction of rotation and the air flow. The air must flow out of the housing of the communication server (see Fig. 18).
4. Plug the fan connector into the socket marked "FAN" on the mainboard.
5. Fit the housing cover.
6. Reconnect the communication server to the power supply.



### Note

The fan only turns if required by the equipment temperature.

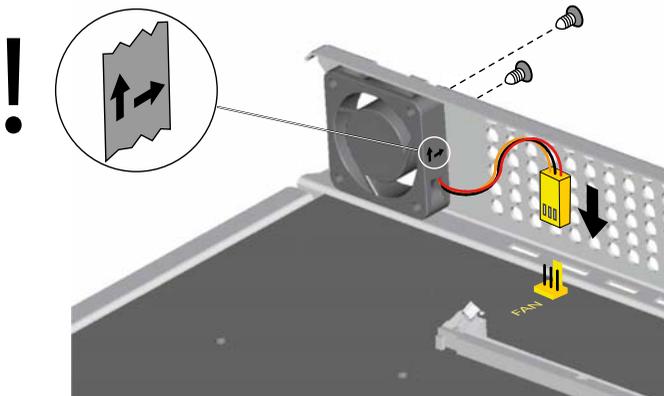


Fig. 18 Installing the fan in Aastra 430

### 4. 2. 7. 3 Installing the cable cover

Materials required:

- Cable cover set for Aastra 415/430
- Screwdriver

To install the cable cover proceed as follows:

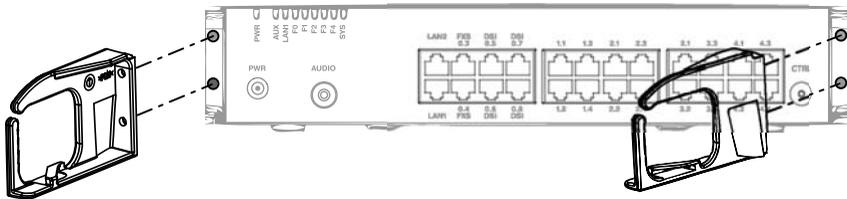
1. Pull off the screw covers on the left and right of the front panel.
2. Use the M4 screws of the cable cover set to secure the brackets for the cable cover to the communication server.



#### Note

The two brackets are not identical. Compare the cable brackets with the figures in Fig. 19.

3. Fit the cable cover over the brackets from above until they are felt to engage.



**Fig. 19** Installing the brackets for the cable cover



#### Tip

To remove the cable cover reach into the side openings of the cover, gently press the two (engaged) lugs outwards and remove the cover.

### 4.3 Earthing and protecting the communication server

The protective earth and equipotential bonding are important integral parts of the safety concept: Standard EN 60950 relevant to safety matters stipulates protective earthing.



**Warning**

High leakage currents can occur as a result of connecting to the communication network.

Establish an earth connection before connecting to the communications network.

Disconnect the communication server from the communications network before carrying out maintenance work.



**Warning**

Transient overvoltage can occur on the mains and on the communications network.

Protect each line installation leading from the building by using one surge voltage protector per core at the isolating point (main) distribution frame or entry point into the building.

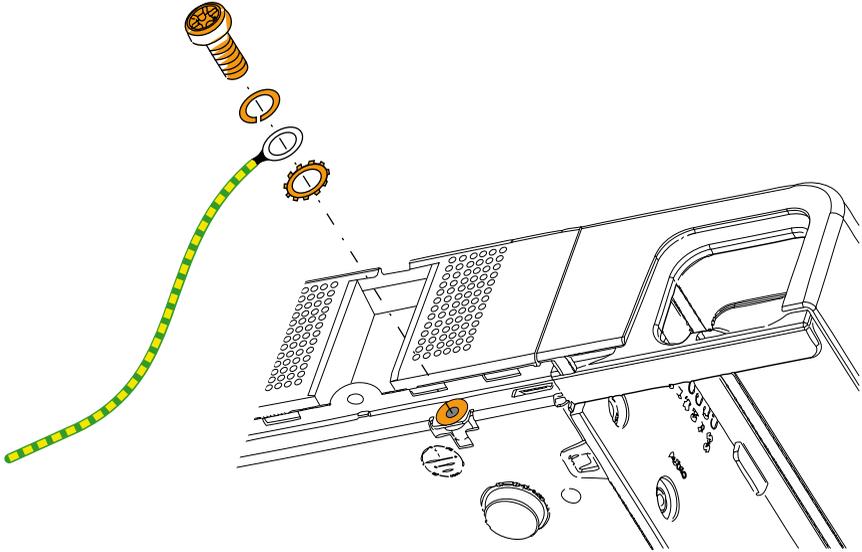
Operation on an IT current distribution system:

The communication server can be operated on an IT power distribution system as per EN/IEC 60950 with voltages of up to 230 VAC.

#### 4.3.1 Connecting the earthing wire

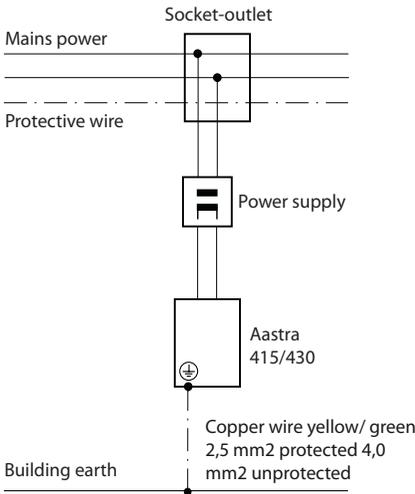
The communication server's earthing connection is located at the front left on the underside and can only be connected once the housing cover has been removed.

The earthing wire is secured by a screw, spring washer and serrated lock washer, which are included in the screw set Aastra 415/430. The serrated lock washer must rest against the metal housing of the communication server.

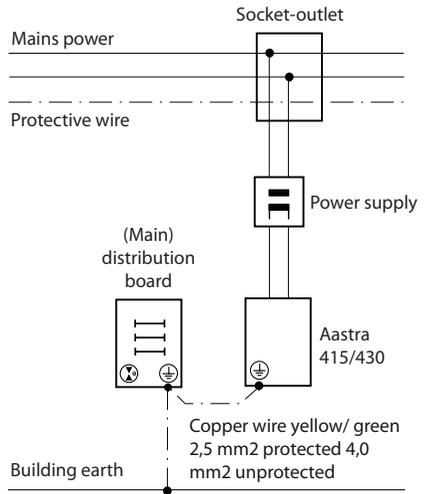


**Fig. 20 Earthing connection**

**Direct connection**



**Indirect connection**



**Fig. 21 Earthing of the communication server in the case of an indirect cabling and direct cabling**



**Note**

In the case of an indirection connection make sure that the communication server's earthing wire does not form any earth loops with the earthed cable screenings of the installation cables leading up to the (main) distribution frame. The cables should be kept as short as possible and laid out in parallel.

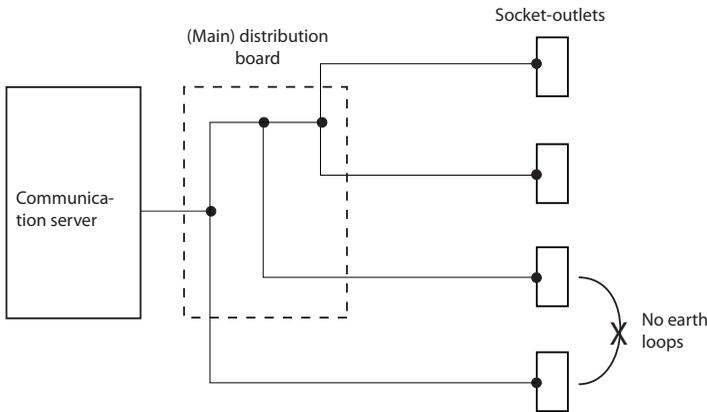
### 4.3.2 Connecting the cable screening

When using shielded installation cables also use shielded RJ45 connectors. In this way the shielding of the installation cables is automatically connected with the housing of the communication server and therefore with the building earth.



**Note**

Connect the cable screens to one another at the splitting point only. Observe the tree structure principle to prevent earth loops.



**Fig. 22** Tree structure principle

## 4.4 Powering the communication server

The communication server is powered as standard with 230 VAC or 115 VAC. To ensure that its operation is maintained even in the event of a mains outage, an external uninterruptible power supply (UPS) must be used.

### 4.4.1 115/230 V power supply

The communication server is powered by the supplied power supply unit. The power supply unit is connected to the mains using a two-pin standard Euro power cable.



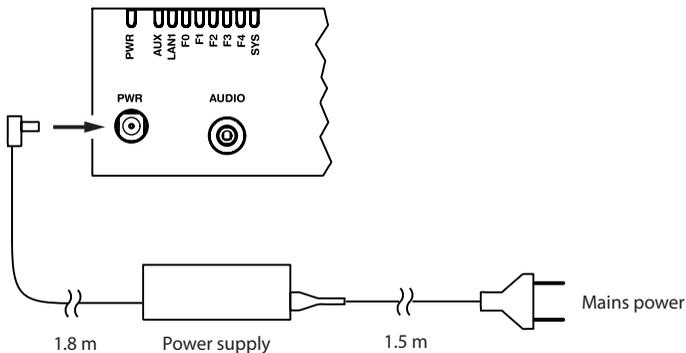
#### **Hazard:**

Hazard due to heat generation in the event of short-circuits.

The mains power supply connection must be protected with 16 A maximum.

Please also note the following points:

- The mains connector acts as a disconnecting device and must be positioned so that it is easily accessible.
- Only ever use the supplied power supply unit.



**Fig. 23** Powering the communication server from the mains

## 4. 4. 2 Uninterruptible power supply (UPS)

The use of an external uninterruptible power supply (UPS) guarantees operation even in the event of a mains outage.

The UPS battery capacity is rated according to the communication server's primary power requirements and the required bridging time. The table below shows the maximum power requirements of the communication server in its maximum configuration and maximum traffic volume.

**Tab. 32 Maximum power requirements of the communication server**

Communication server	Maximum power requirements
Aastra 415	100 VA
Aastra 430	150 VA

The battery capacity required [Ah] can be calculated using the battery voltage and the maximum bridging time. It is important to note that the battery must never be allowed to become completely discharged and that in typical conditions only approx. 60% of the maximum power requirements is needed.



### Note

The uninterrupted operation of the communication server is ensured if the UPS takes over the power supply within 20 ms of the mains outage.



### See also

For more technical details see "Technical Data", page 232.

## 4. 5 Equipping the Basic System

For an individual expansion the Aastra 415/430 basic system can be equipped with interface cards, the appropriate wiring adapters and system modules. An overview can be found in the Chapter "Expansion Stages and System Capacity", page 33.

### 4.5.1 Interface card

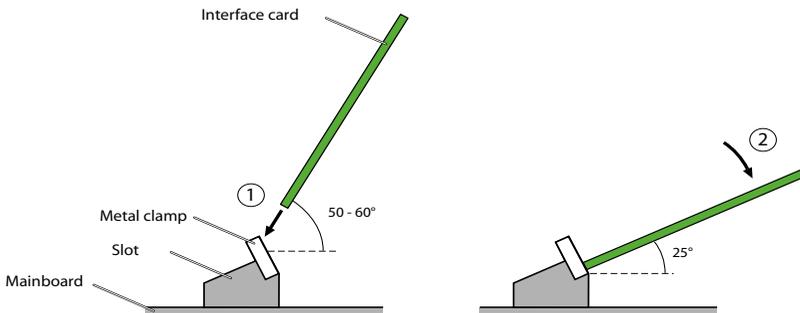
Interface cards are fitted to slots IC1...IC4. IC3 and IC4 are to be found only on the Aastra 430 (see Fig. 7).



#### Warning

Be sure to observe the "Safety regulations", page 72.

1. Disconnect the communication server from the power supply.
2. Remove the housing cover.
3. Place the interface card at a slight angle into the required slot (see Fig. 24). Make sure the angled side of the interface card is facing backwards (i.e. it must not project over the wiring adapter slots).
4. Carefully press the interface card downwards until the two lateral metal clamps engage.
5. Fit the corresponding wiring adapter (see "Wiring Adapter", page 88) into the appropriate wiring adapter slot WA1...WA4.
6. Fit the housing cover.
7. Reconnect the communication server to the power supply.



**Fig. 24** Fitting an interface card



#### Notes

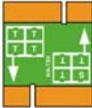
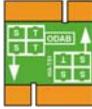
- The ODAB options card must be fitted to slot IC2 (Aastra 415) or slot IC4 (Aastra 430) if it is to be used for connecting a door intercom (see "Equipment on the ODAB options card", page 122).
- The interface cards EAD4V and EAD4C cannot be fitted to slot IC4 of an Aastra 430 due to their mechanical dimensions.

## 4.5.2 Wiring Adapter

Wiring adapters are used to route the interfaces of the interface cards to the RJ45 sockets on the front panel and are fitted to slots WA1...WA4. The WA0 slot is never equipped. Slots WA3 and WA4 are to be found only on the Aastra 430 (see also Fig. 7).

The table below provides an overview of the combinations of wiring adapters and interface cards. Unless specified otherwise, the corresponding wiring adapter is included in the equipment supplied with each interface card.

**Tab. 33 Combinations of wiring adapters / interface cards**

Wiring Adapter	Interface card	Plug-in orientation	Port number			
			X.1	X.2	X.3	X.4
	TIC-4TS	TTTT	T	T	T	T
	TIC-4TS	STTT	S	T	T	T
	TIC-2TS	TTTT	T	T	–	–
	TIC-2TS	STTT	S	T	–	–
	ESST <sup>1)2)</sup>	STTT	S	T	–	–
	TIC-4TS <sup>1)</sup>	SSTT	S	S	T	T
	TIC-4TS <sup>1)</sup>	SSST	S	S	S	T
	TIC-2TS <sup>1)</sup>	SSTT	S	S	–	–
	TIC-2TS <sup>1)</sup>	SSST	S	S	–	–
	ESST <sup>1)2)</sup>	SSTT	S	S	–	–
	ESST <sup>1)2)</sup>	SSST	S	S	–	–
ODAB	SSTT	I/O 1.2	I/O 3,4	ab/Door Intercom	–	
	ETAB <sup>4)3)</sup>	–	FXS	FXS	FXS	FXS
	EADP <sup>4)3)</sup>	–	DSI	DSI	DSI	DSI
	EAD4C <sup>1)</sup>	–	DSI	DSI	DSI	DSI
	EAD4V <sup>1)</sup>	–	DSI	DSI	DSI	DSI
	EAAB <sup>2)1)</sup>	–	–	–	FXO	FXO
	TIC-4AB	–	FXO	FXO	FXO	FXO
	TIC-2AB	–	FXO	FXO	–	–
WA-1PRI	TIC-1PRI	–	PRI	Test <sup>4)</sup>	–	–

<sup>1)</sup> The wiring adapter is not part of the equipment supplied with this interface card and must be ordered separately.

<sup>2)</sup> On the ESST terminal card the jumper must always be fitted in position T (see Fig. 25).

<sup>3)</sup> The wiring adapter is only part of the equipment supplied with order variant Aastra 415/430.

<sup>4)</sup> For test purposes the PRI interface is also routed in parallel to port X.2.

Please note:

- The arrows on the wiring adapters specify the plug-in orientation of the required port assignment.
- On the ESST terminal card the jumper must always be fitted in position T (see figure below). The port assignment is specified by the wiring adapter alone.



**Fig. 25** Jumper position on card ESST



### Note

Any incorrectly fitted or missing wiring adapters are signalled by a red flashing LED on the display after start-up (see "Wiring Adapter Malfunction Mode", page 197).

## 4.5.3 DSP module

DSP modules belong to the category of system modules and are fitted to the SM1 slot (see Fig. 7). Three DSP modules are stackable.



### Warning

Be sure to observe the "Safety regulations", page 72.

1. Disconnect the communication server from the power supply.
2. Remove the housing cover.
3. Remove the fastening screw from module slot SM1.
4. Instead of the fastening screw, screw in the spacer sleeve enclosed with the module.
5. Place the module on slot SM1 of the communication server (or onto a module already fitted in that slot) and press down evenly on both connectors as far as the stop.
6. Secure the module with the fastening screw.
7. Fit the housing cover.
8. Reconnect the communication server to the power supply.

## 4.5.4 Component mounting rules

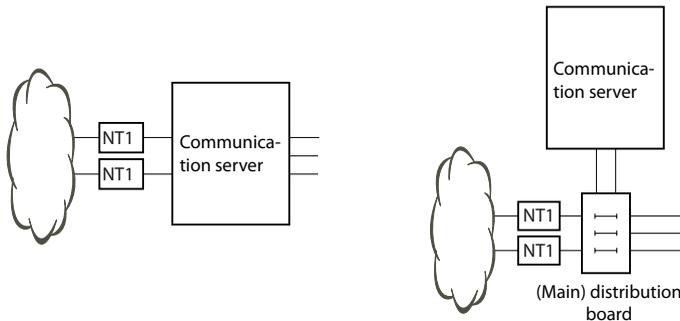
The component mounting rules mentioned in the previous chapters are listed here in an overview:

- In principle the interface cards can be used in all the card slots.  
Exceptions:
  - The interface cards EAD4V and EAD4C cannot be fitted to slot IC4 of an Aastra 430 due to their mechanical dimensions.
  - If the ODAB options card is used to connect a door intercom, it must be fitted to slot IC2 (Aastra 415) or slot IC4 (Aastra 430).
  - If the ODAB options card is used to control switch group positions and external devices, it must be fitted to slot IC1 (Aastra 415) or slot IC1, 2 or 3 (Aastra 430).
- DSP modules are stackable and must always be fitted to slot SM1. Slot SM2 on the Aastra 430 communication server is provided for future expansions.
- On the ESST terminal card the jumper must always be fitted in position T (see [Fig. 25](#)).
- The interfaces are enabled sequentially when the communication server is started up. The following rules apply:
  - The number of interfaces actually enabled is determined in each case by the system capacity (see "[System capacity](#)", page 50). If a limit value is reached, all the interface cards or all the interfaces of the last card may not be enabled.
  - The interfaces are enabled in accordance with their designation, starting with the lower designations. This means that the terminal interfaces on the main-board are always enabled before those on the interface cards.

## 4.6 Connecting the communication server

There are two possibilities for connection to the telephone network and the terminal-side cabling:

- Direct connection
- Indirect cabling via (main) distribution frame and any universal building cable installation (UBC) (see also [Fig. 29](#) and [Fig. 30](#)).



**Fig. 26** Direct cabling (left) and indirect cabling (right)

On the front panel all the connections are made using RJ45 connectors.

### 4.6.1 Direct connection

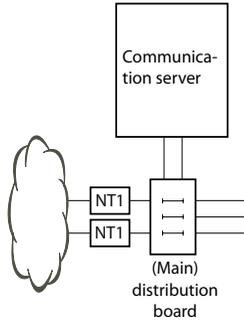
Standard commercial cables are used to connect directly to the telephone network. Details can be found in the Chapter "[Network Interfaces](#)", page 96.

### 4.6.2 Indirect cabling

There are two possibilities for connecting the communication server indirectly to the telephone network and terminal-side cabling:

- Connection via main distribution board
- Connection to a universal building cable installation (UBC)

## 4.6.2.1 Connection via main distribution board



**Fig. 27** Connection via main distribution board

The interface sockets on the front panel are connected with the (main) distribution frame or the patch panels using either patch cables or prefabricated system cables (see "Equipment Overview", page 231).

### Prefabricated system cable 12 x RJ45

The cable is 6 m long and, at one extremity, has 12 RJ45 connectors for the interfaces on the front panel. Two of them have 4 cores; the others, 2 cores. This means the cable is suitable for connecting the following interfaces:

- 2 network interfaces BRI-T or 2 terminal interfaces BRI-S or a combination thereof.
- 10 terminal interfaces (DSI, FXS) or a combination thereof.



#### Notes:

- This cable cannot be used to connect PRI and Ethernet interfaces (see also "Connection of PRI primary rate interface", page 100 and "Connection of Ethernet interfaces", page 130).
- It is not possible to connect an ODAB door intercom interface with only one cable (see also "Connection of a door intercom (TFE)", page 123).

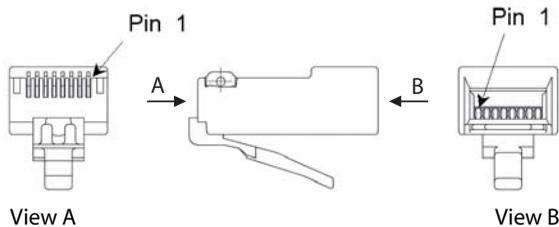


#### Tip

Use standard commercial connecting cables not just for the PRI and Ethernet interfaces but also for connecting the BRI-T interfaces.

**Tab. 34 Schematic diagram of prefabricated system cable 12 × RJ45**

Stranded element	Core colour	Cable designation	RJ45	Signal	
			Pin	Connection four-wire	Two-wire connection
1	white	1	4	f	a
	blue		5	e	b
	turquoise		6	d	-
	violet		3	c	-
2	white	2	4	f	a
	orange		5	e	b
	turquoise		6	d	-
	violet		3	c	-
3	white	3	4	-	a
	green		5	-	b
	turquoise	4	4	-	a
	violet		5	-	b
4	white	5	4	-	a
	brown		5	-	b
	turquoise	6.	4	-	a
	violet		5	-	b
5	white	7	4	-	a
	grey		5	-	b
	turquoise	8	4	-	a
	violet		5	-	b
6	red	9.	4	-	a
	blue		5	-	b
	turquoise	10	4	-	a
	violet		5	-	b
7	red	11	4	-	a
	orange		5	-	b
	turquoise	12	4	-	a
	violet		5	-	b



**Fig. 28 Pin numbering, RJ45 connector**

### 4. 6. 2. 2 Connection to a universal building cable installation (UBC)

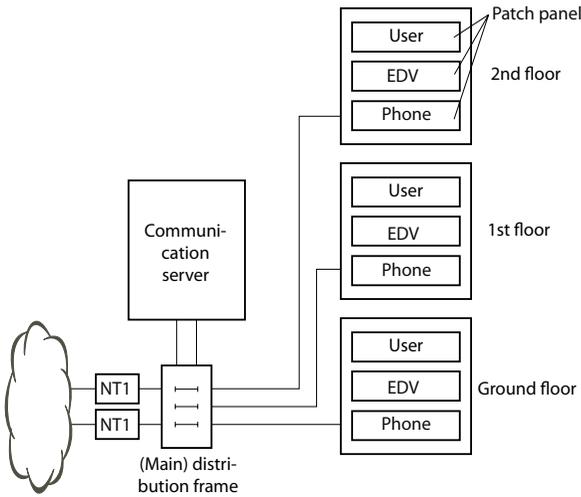


Fig. 29 Connecting to a UBC via a (main) distribution board (example)

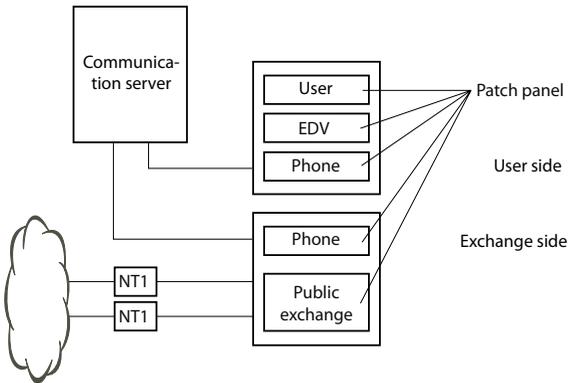
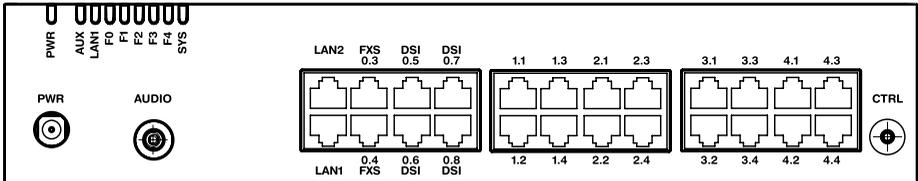


Fig. 30 Connecting to a UBC via wiring centre (example)

## 4.7 Cabling interfaces

All the interfaces are routed to the front panel and are therefore accessible without opening the communication server.



**Fig. 31** Interfaces on the front panel with port designation (Aastra 430)

### 4.7.1 Port addressing

A port address is always of the type x.y. x is the number of the card slot, and y, the port number.

The slot numbering begins with 0 (= mainboard) and ends with 2 (for Aastra 415) or 4 (for Aastra 430).

With BRI-S interface and DSI interface addresses, the terminal selection digit (TSD) is displayed in AMS in addition to the slot and port numbers.

**Tab. 35** Examples of interface addressing

Slot	Port address
Mainboard; DSI interface x.5	0.5
Interface card on slot IC1; interface x.3	1.3
Terminal with TSD 2 on interface card in IC3; interface x.4	3.4-2

## 4.7.2 Network Interfaces

Equipping the system with interface cards provides the necessary network interfaces. With the exception of the Ethernet interface, which also represents a network interface via SIP access, there are no network interfaces on the Aastra 415/430 mainboard.

### 4.7.2.1 Basic rate interface BRI-T

With the appropriate interface cards and Wiring Adapters, BRI network interfaces can be made available at RJ45 sockets 1.x...4.x (for Aastra 415 1.x and 2.x only). The possible RJ45 sockets are highlighted in colour in the figure below.

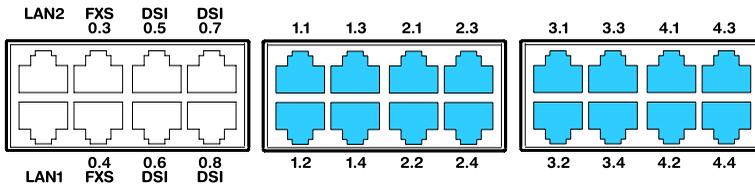


Fig. 32 Connection possibilities for BRI network interfaces



#### Notes

- The interfaces can be configured on BRI-S using the wiring adapters (see "Wiring Adapter", page 88).
- The maximum number of interfaces per communication server has to be taken into account (see Tab. 27).
- Circuit type as per EN/IEC 60950: SELV

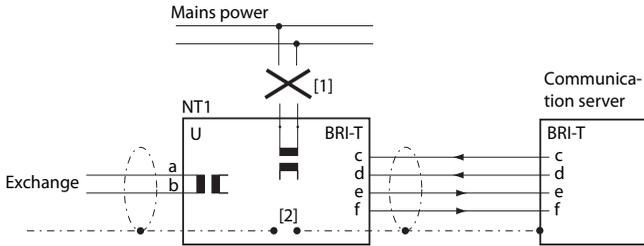
The connection from the front panel to the NT1 (Network Termination) is via standard commercial straight patch cables with 8-pin RJ45 connectors on both sides. With the appropriate tools you can also create your own cables.

## Cable Requirements

Tab. 36 Cable requirements for basic rate interface BRI-T

Core pairs × cores	1 × 4 or 2 × 2
Stranded	yes
Wire diameter, core	0.4...0.6 mm
Screening	recommended
Characteristic impedance	< 125 Ω (100 kHz), < 115 Ω (1 MHz)
Wave attenuation	< 6 dB/km (100 kHz), < 26 dB/km (1 MHz)
Near / crosstalk attenuation	> 54 dB/100 m (1 kHz to 1 MHz)

## BRI basic rate interface network-side

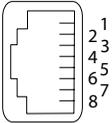
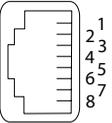


- [1] Do not connect power supply NT1
- [2] Do not fit the jumper

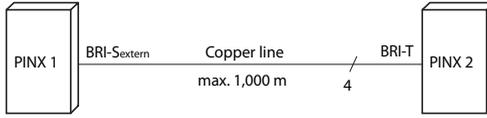
**Fig. 33 Basic access on NT1**

The assignment of the RJ45 connector is identical on the NT-side and on the side of the communication server.

**Tab. 37 Wiring of the BRI basic rate interface network-side**

NT1			Cable cores Straight patch cable	Communication server		
Socket	Pin	BRI-T signal		BRI-T signal	Pin	Socket
	1	-		-	1	
	2	-		-	2	
	3	c	←	c	3	
	4	f	→	f	4	
	5	e	→	e	5	
	6	d	←	d	6	
	7	-		-	7	
	8	-		-	8	

## Basic access in the private leased-line network



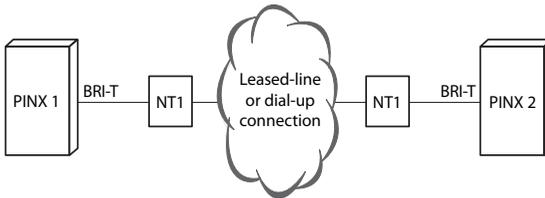
**Fig. 34** BRI-S basic rate interface external, networked with copper line

**Tab. 38** Connection of BRI-S basic rate interface external, networked with copper line

PINX 1 signal BRI-S basic rate interface external	Cable cores	PINX 2 signal Basic rate interface BRI-T
c	←	c
f	→	f
e	→	e
d	←	d

### Bus configuration

BRI-S external is subject to the conditions that apply to terminal interface BRI-S (see "BRI-S terminal interfaces", page 112).



**Fig. 35** Basic rate interface BRI-T, networked with leased-line or dial-up connection

**Tab. 39** Cabling for basic rate interface BRI-T, networked with leased-line or dial-up connection

PINX 1 signal, basic rate interface BRI-T	Cable cores	NT1	Network	NT1	Cable cores	PINX 2 signal, basic rate interface BRI-T
c	→	c		c	←	c
f	←	f		f	→	f
e	←	e		e	→	e
d	→	d		d	←	d

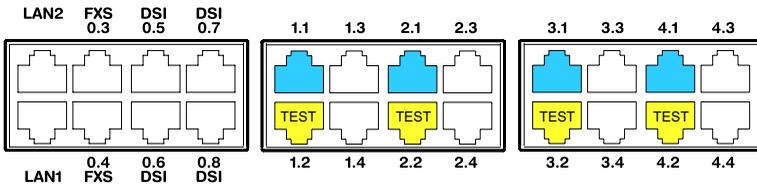


### See also

Chapter "Connections with basic accesses" in the PISN/QSIG Networking System Manual.

### 4.7.2.2 Primary rate interface PRI

With the appropriate interface cards and Wiring Adapters, PRI network interfaces can be made available at RJ45 sockets 1.1, 2.1, 3.1 and 4.1 (Aastra 415 only 1.1, 2.1). For test purposes the PRI interface is also routed in parallel to ports x.2. The possible RJ45 sockets are highlighted in colour in the figure below.



**Fig. 36** Connection possibilities for PRI network interfaces



#### Notes

- In normal operation the x.2 test socket must not be connected; otherwise faults may occur.
- Circuit type as per EN/IEC 60950: SELV

### Cable requirements

The connection to NT1 (Network Termination) is implemented using commercially available screened cables with 8-pin RJ45 connectors at both ends, e.g. S-FTP 4P, PVC, Cat. 5e.

**Tab. 40** Cable requirements for the primary rate interface)

Core pairs × cores	2 × 2 (for short distances also 1 × 4)
Stranded	yes
Wire diameter, core	0.4...0.6 mm
Screening	yes (Cat. 5)
Characteristic impedance	< 125 Ω (100 kHz), < 115 Ω (1 MHz)
Wave attenuation	< 6 dB/km (100 kHz), < 26 dB/km (1 MHz)
Near / crosstalk attenuation	> 54 dB/100 m (1 kHz to 1 MHz)

## PRI primary rate interface, network-side

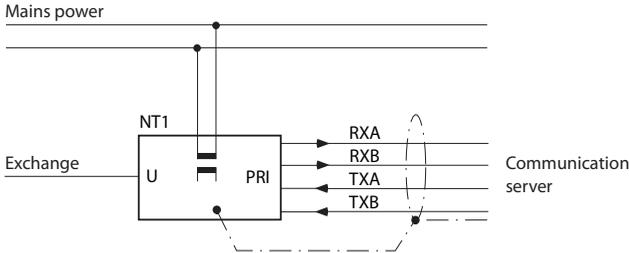


Fig. 37 PRI primary rate interface on NT1

Tab. 41 Connection of PRI primary rate interface

NT1			Cable cores Straight patch cable	Communication server		
Socket	Pin	PRI signal <sup>1)</sup>		PRI signal	Pin	Socket
	1	TxA	→	RxA	1	
	2	TxB	→	RxB	2	
	3	-		-	3	
	4	RxA	←	TxA	4	
	5	RxB	←	TxB	5	
	6	-		-	6	
	7	-		-	7	
	8	-		-	8	

<sup>1)</sup> Other designations are also possible on the NT1 such as: "S2m ab" instead of "TxA/TxB" and "S2m an" instead of "RxA/RxB".

## Primary rate access in the private leased-line network

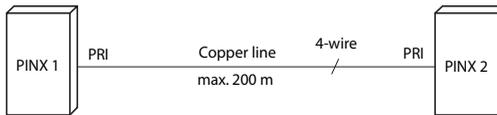
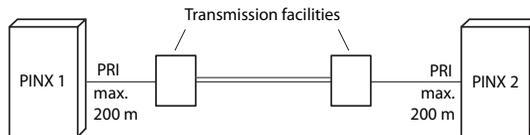


Fig. 38 Primary rate access, networked with copper line

**Tab. 42 Cabling for primary rate access PRI, networked with copper line**

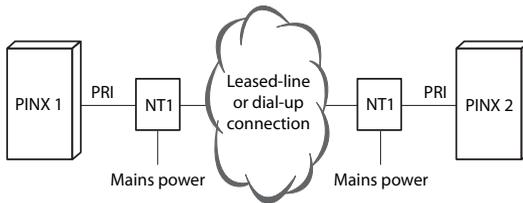
RJ45 Pin	PRI PINX 1 signal	Cable cores Crossed patch cable	PRI PINX 2 signal	RJ45 Pin
1	RxA		RxA	1
2	RxB		RxB	2
3	—		—	3
4	TxA		TxA	4
5	TxB		TxB	5
6	—		—	6
7	—		—	7
8	—		—	8



**Fig. 39 Primary rate interface, networked with transmission equipment**

**Tab. 43 Cabling for primary rate access PRI, networked with transmission equipment**

RJ45 Pin	PRI PINX 1 signal	Cable cores, straight patch cable	Transmission equipment signal	Transmission equipment signal	Cable cores, straight patch cable	PRI PINX 2 signal	RJ45 Pin
1	RxA	←	RxA	RxA	→	RxA	1
2	RxB	←	RxB	RxB	→	RxB	2
3	—					—	3
4	TxA	→	TxA	TxA	←	TxA	4
5	TxB	→	TxB	TxB	←	TxB	5
6	—					—	6
7	—					—	7
8	—					—	8



**Fig. 40 Primary rate access PRI, networked with leased-line or dial-up connection**

**Tab. 44 Cabling for primary rate access PRI, networked with leased-line or dial-up connection**

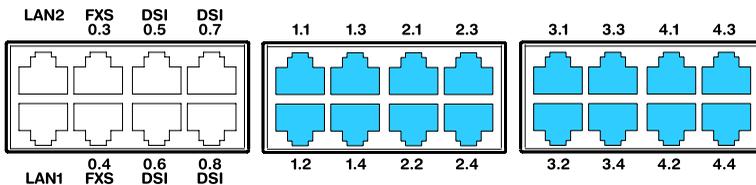
RJ45 Pin	PRI PINX 1 signal	Cable cores, straight patch cable	PRI signal NT1	Network	PRI signal NT1	Cable cores Straight patch cable	PRI PINX 2 signal	RJ45 Pin
1	RxA	←	RxA		RxA	→	RxA	1
2	RxB	←	RxB		RxB	→	RxB	2
3	—						—	3
4	TxA	→	TxA		TxA	←	TxA	4
5	TxB	→	TxB		TxB	←	TxB	5
6	—						—	6
7	—						—	7
8	—						—	8



**See also:**  
System Manual “PISN / QSIG Networking”

### 4.7.2.3 FXO network interfaces

With the appropriate interface cards and Wiring Adapters, FXO network interfaces can be made available at RJ45 sockets 1.x...4.x (for Aastra 415 only 1.x and 2.x) The possible RJ45 sockets are highlighted in colour in the figure below. The maximum number of interfaces per communication server has to be taken into account (see Tab. 27).



**Fig. 41 Connection possibilities for FXO network interfaces**

In a direct connection the RJ45 connector is connected directly to the trunk cable using a crimp clip.

With an indirection connection you need to observe the cable requirements.



**Note**

Circuit type as per EN/IEC 60950: TNV-3

## Connection

Assignment of the RJ45 sockets on the front panel:

**Tab. 45 Connection FXO network interface**

Public analogue network	Communication server		
	FXO signal	Pin	Socket
	-	1	
	-	2	
	-	3	
	a	4	
	b	5	
	-	6	
	-	7	
	-	8	

## Cable Requirements

**Tab. 46 Cable requirements for FXO network interface**

Core pairs × cores	1 × 2
Stranded	not required
Wire diameter, core	0.4 ... 0.8 mm
Screening	not required
Resistance	max. 2 × 250 Ω

### 4.7.3 Terminal interfaces

The number of available terminal interfaces on the mainboard can be increased by fitting interface cards.

The RJ45 connector assignment is the same for interfaces of the mainboard and terminal cards.

#### 4.7.3.1 Terminal interfaces DSI

The DSI terminal interfaces of the mainboard (for Aastra 415 only 0.5 and 0.6) are permanently routed to the front panel and labelled accordingly. With the appropriate interface cards and Wiring Adapters, additional DSI terminal interfaces can also be made available at the RJ45 sockets 1.x...4.x (with Aastra 415 only 1.x and 2.x). The possible RJ45 sockets are highlighted in colour in the figure below.

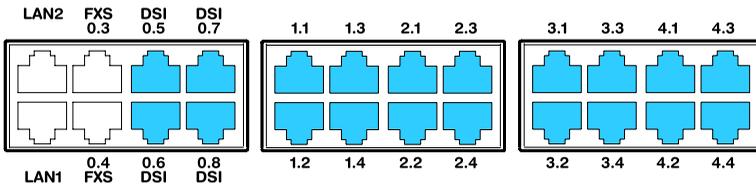


Fig. 42 Connection possibilities for DSI terminal interfaces



**Note**

Circuit type as per EN/IEC 60950: SELV

## Connection

Tab. 47 Connection of DSI terminal interfaces

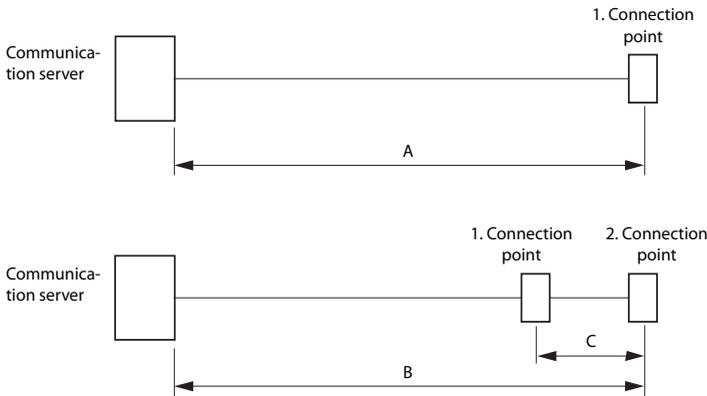
Communication server			Cable cores	Connection socket		
Socket	Pin	DSI signal		DSI signal	Pin	Socket
	1	-		-	1	
	2	-		-	2	
	3	-		-	3	
	4	a		a	4	
	5	b		b	5	
	6	-		-	6	
	7	-		-	7	
	8	-		-	8	

## DSI bus configuration

Depending on the line length, 1 or 2 system phones of the Aastra 5300<sup>1)</sup> series can be connected on each DSI-AD2 interface. The following requirements apply with regard to the bus length to ensure that the maximum permissible signal delay is not exceeded:

**Tab. 48 DSI-AD2 bus length and number of phones**

Number of phones	Total length of DSI-AD2 bus	Distance between the 1st and 2nd connection point (excl. connection cable)
1	A: max. 1200 m	–
2	B: max. 1200 m	C: max. 10 m



**Fig. 43 DSI-AD2 bus**



### Notes

The total length of the cables from the communication server to the system phone must not be less than 10 m.

<sup>1)</sup> Office 10, Office 25, Office 35, Office 45/45pro are supported as before

## Restrictions

The maximum length of an DSI-AD2 bus is further restricted by:

- the maximum power requirements of the connected system phones and their supplementary equipment. In this context the SB-4+ and SB-8 DECT radio units are also considered as system phones.
- the line resistance (depending on the line length and wire diameter)

**Tab. 49 Maximal power requirements of the system phones on the DSI bus**

System phone <sup>1)</sup>	Connection	Max. power input [mW]
Aastra 5360 <sup>2)</sup>	DSI-AD2 interface	900
Aastra 5361	DSI-AD2 interface	1220 <sup>3)</sup>
Aastra 5370	DSI-AD2 interface	1220 <sup>3)</sup>
Aastra 5380	DSI-AD2 interface	1340 <sup>3)</sup>
Aastra 5370, Aastra 5380 with power supply unit	DSI-AD2 interface	0
Expansion key module Aastra M530	Aastra 5370	300
Expansion key module Aastra M530	Aastra 5380	500
Expansion key module Aastra M535	Aastra 5370, Aastra 5380	0 <sup>4)</sup>
DECT radio unit without power supply unit SB-4+	DSI-AD2 interface	1700 <sup>5)</sup>
DECT radio unit without power supply unit SB-8	2 DSI-AD2 interfaces	1550 <sup>6)</sup>
DECT radio unit with power supply unit SB-4+/SB-8	1 or 2 DSI-AD2 interfaces	< 100
Office 10 <sup>2)</sup>	DSI-AD2 interface	900
Office 25 <sup>2)</sup>	DSI-AD2 interface	900
Office 35 <sup>2)</sup>	DSI-AD2 interface	630 <sup>7)</sup>
Office 45 <sup>2)</sup>	DSI-AD2 interface	1110 <sup>7)</sup>
Office 45pro with power supply unit <sup>2)</sup>	DSI-AD2 interface	< 10
Expansion key module (EKP) <sup>2)</sup>	Office 35	150
Expansion key module (EKP) <sup>2)</sup>	Office 45	210
Alpha keyboard <sup>2)</sup>	Office 35, Office 45	30

1) Assumptions:

System phones: In hands-free mode, loudspeaker on maximum volume, all LEDs lit

Aastra 5380: Backlighting with maximum brightness

Expansion key modules: All LEDs lit

Radio units: Active call connection on all channels

2) Although no longer available, the phone is still supported.

3) The value can increase to approx. 600 mW if the power available at the DSI-AD2 bus allows it.

4) An Aastra M535 always requires a power supply unit

5) The value applies to radio units with hardware version "-2". The value for hardware version "-1" is 300 mW lower.

6) The value applies to each interface and to radio units with hardware version "-2". The value per interface for radio units with hardware version "-1" is 150 mW lower.

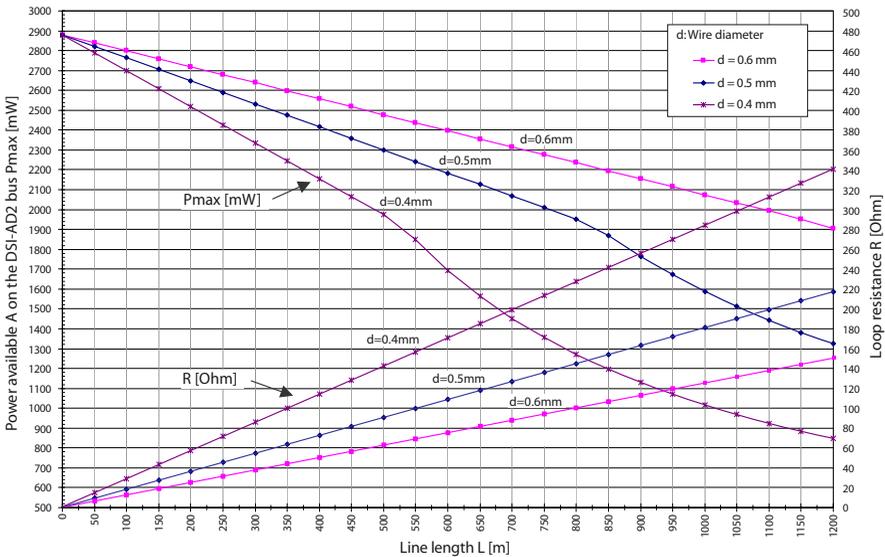
7) The value applies to phones with hardware version "-2". The value for phones with hardware version "-1" is 60 mW lower.

The two diagrams below show the power available on the DSI-AD2 bus in relation to the line length and the wire diameter. The table can then be used to determine the number and type of system phones that can be connected to the DSI-AD2 bus under the given conditions. The power available can be calculated by measuring the loop resistance where the wire diameter is known.

Due to the different hardware versions of the radio units, basic systems and interface cards, the power available on the DSI-AD2 bus is not the same in every case:

**Power available A:**

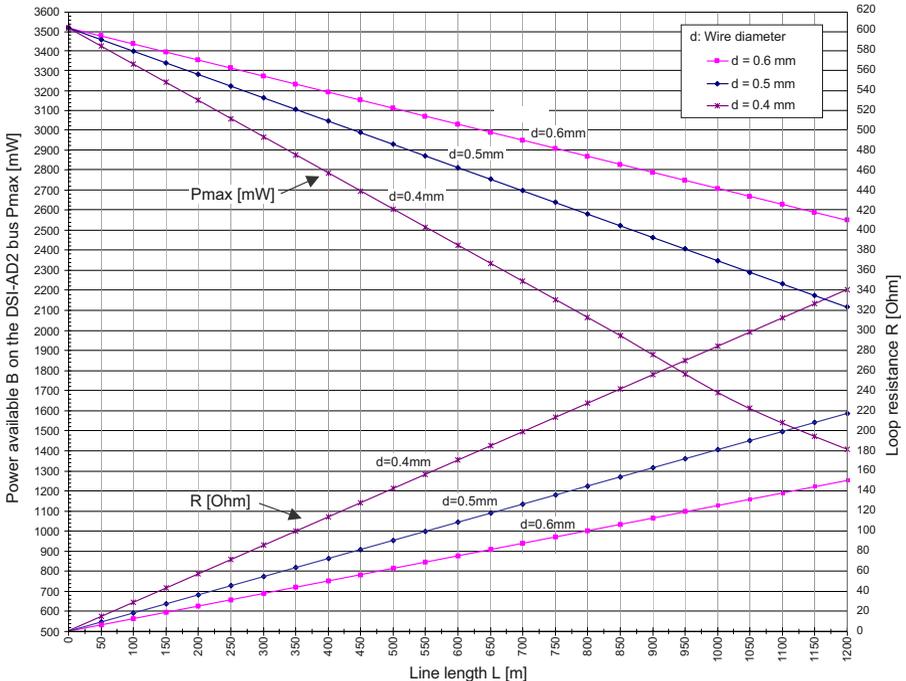
- Applies to all the system phones of the Aastra 5300 series and the Office series.
- Applies to the SB-4+/SB-8 DECT radio units with hardware version "-1".
- Applies to the SB-4+/SB-8 DECT radio units with hardware version "-2" if they are **not** connected to a basic system with hardware version "-2" or are **not** connected to an EADP4 interface card with hardware version "-3".



**Fig. 44** Power available A on the DSI-AD2 bus

## Power available B:

Applies to the SB-4+/SB-8 DECT radio units with hardware version "-2" if they are connected to a basic system with hardware version "-2" or to an EADP4 interface card with hardware version "-3".



**Fig. 45** Power available B on the DSI-AD2 bus



### Notes

- If another system phone is operated on the DSI-AD2 bus in addition to an Aastra 5361, Aastra 5370 or Aastra 5380, at least one phone must be powered by a local power supply unit.
- An Aastra 5370 or Aastra 5380 with an Aastra M535 expansion key module always requires a power supply unit.
- An Aastra 5380 with 3 Aastra M530 expansion key modules always requires a power supply unit. With 2 expansion key modules the use of power supply unit depends on the line length and the line cross-section.

### Automatic detection of critical power supply situations

Only Aastra 5360, and phones of the Office series:

When a system phone (or a second such phone) is connected to the DSI bus, the maximum power input is automatically determined; all the system phones (incl. expansion key module and alphanumeric keyboard) connected to the interface are taken into account. The maximum power available is also determined based on the calculated line length (assumption: Diameter = 0.5 mm). If the calculated power available is below the maximum possible power input of the connected system phones, the message "*Power supply critical xy*" is generated on the phones connected last (accuracy approx. 150 m).

System phones Aastra 5361, Aastra 5370 and Aastra 5380 only:

During startup, these system phones carry out a detailed measurement of the available power. A warning is shown on the display if the result is inadequate: *Line power too weak: External power supply required!*



#### Notes

- Depending on the power available based on the line length on the DSI-AD2 bus the ringing and hands-free volume decreases accordingly.
- The backlighting of the Aastra 5380 display is brighter if the phone is powered by a power supply unit.

### Rating examples

Example 1:

Aastra 5370

Maximal power requirements as per [Tab. 49](#): 1220 mW

[Fig. 44](#) indicates:

- Maximum line length for a wire diameter of 0.4 mm: 840 m
- Maximum line length for a wire diameter of 0.5 mm: 1200 m
- Maximum line length for a wire diameter of 0,6 mm: 1200 m

Example 2:

An Aastra 5380 with 2 Aastra M530 expansion key modules

Power requirements as per [Tab. 49](#):  $1340 + 300 + 300 = 1940$  mW.

[Fig. 44](#) indicates:

- Maximum line length for a wire diameter of 0.4 mm: 520 m

- Maximum line length for a wire diameter of 0.5 mm: 820 m
- Maximum line length for a wire diameter of 0,6 mm: 1170 m

Example 3:

Evaluation of an existing line installation

Line diameter: 0.5 mm

Loop resistance: 120 Ω

Fig. 44 indicates:

- Line length: 660 m
- Power available: 2120 mW

## Cable Requirements

**Tab. 50** Requirements for an DSI bus cable

Core pairs × cores	1 × 2 or 1 × 4
Stranded	yes <sup>1)</sup>
Wire diameter, core	0.4...0.6 mm
Screening	recommended
Characteristic impedance	< 130 Ω (1 MHz)

<sup>1)</sup> Note: max. 25 m can be crossed unstranded.  
(CH: Applies also to cable type G51)

## Installation rules

- If an Aastra DECT radio unit is used, do not connect any other system phone to the same DSI bus.
- Do not use any terminating resistors at the bus extremity.
- Avoid using different cable cross-sections on the same bus
- Use the supplied cables for connecting the system phones
- Cabling of AD2 terminals is restricted to pairs of a separate dedicated cable(s).<sup>1)</sup>

<sup>1)</sup> Applies in Australia only

## Terminals

The following system terminals can be operated on the DSI-AD2 bus:

- System phones of the Aastra 5300<sup>1)</sup> series
- Aastra DECT Radio units

The system phones on an DSI-AD2 bus are addressed via a single-digit terminal selection digit (TSD).

Example:

The address of a system phone with TSD 2 on DSI interface 3.5 is 3.5-2.

### 4.7.3.2 BRI-S terminal interfaces

With the appropriate interface cards and Wiring Adapters, BRI-S terminal interfaces can be made available at RJ45 sockets 1.x...4.x (for Aastra 415 only 1.x and 2.x). The possible RJ45 sockets are highlighted in colour in the figure below.

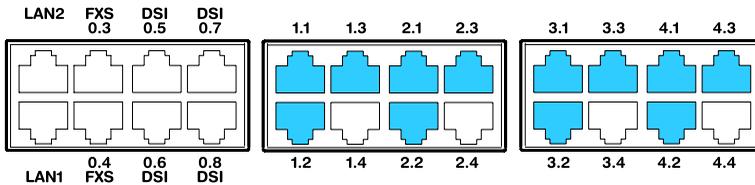


Fig. 46 Connection possibilities for BRI-S terminal interfaces



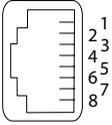
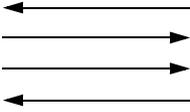
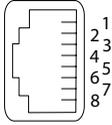
#### Notes

- The interfaces can be configured on BRI-T using the wiring adapters (see "Wiring Adapter", page 88).
- The maximum number of interfaces per communication server has to be taken into account (see Tab. 27).

<sup>1)</sup> Office 10, Office 25, Office 35, Office 45/45pro are supported as before

## Connection

**Tab. 51 Connection of BRI-S terminal interfaces**

Communication server			Cable cores	Connection socket		
Socket	Pin	BRI-S signal		BRI-S signal	Pin	Socket
	1	-		-	1	
	2	-		-	2	
	3	c		c	3	
	4	f		f	4	
	5	e		e	5	
	6	d		d	6	
	7	-		-	7	
	8	-		-	8	

## S bus configuration

The S bus is a four-wire, serial ISDN bus based on the DSS1 protocol (ETSI standard). It starts in each case at an BRI-S interface of the communication server. Four bus configurations are possible, depending on the line length and the number of terminals:

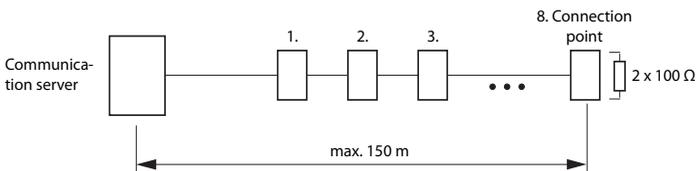
**Tab. 52 S bus configurations depending on line length and the number of terminals.**

S bus	Short	Short, V-shaped	Long	Point-to-point
Length (max.)				
Server ↔ terminal	150 m	2 × 150 m	500 m	1'000 m
Terminal 1 ↔ Terminal 4	-	-	20 m	-
Number of terminals (max.)	8	8	4	1

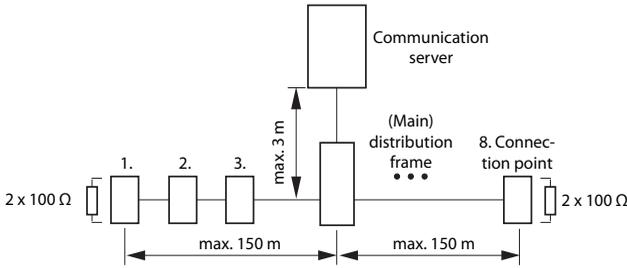


### Note

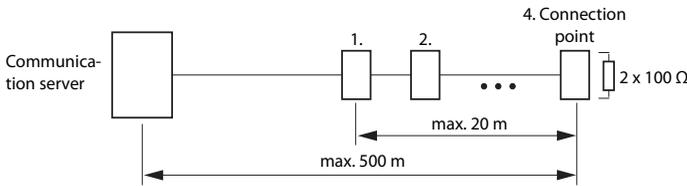
The maximum number of terminals per S bus depends on the power requirements of the terminals (see "Restrictions", page 114).



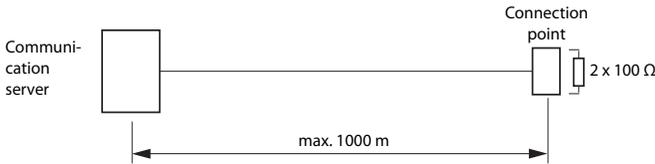
**Fig. 47 S bus, short**



**Fig. 48 S bus, short, V-shaped**



**Fig. 49 S bus, long**



**Fig. 50 S bus, point-to-point**

Greater distances (up to 8 km) can be achieved using a standard commercial S bus extension.

### Restrictions

The maximum number of terminals per S bus is further restricted by the power requirements of the terminals and their supplementary equipment:

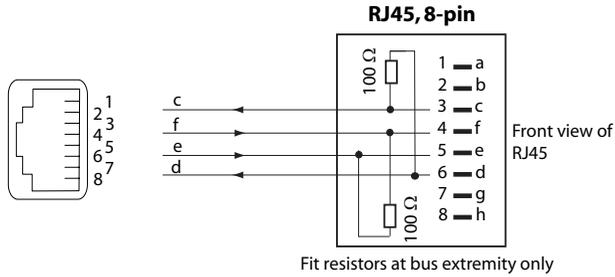
**Tab. 53 Power balance on the S bus**

	Power available [W]
S bus short	5 <sup>1)</sup>
S bus, long	3.5 <sup>1)</sup>

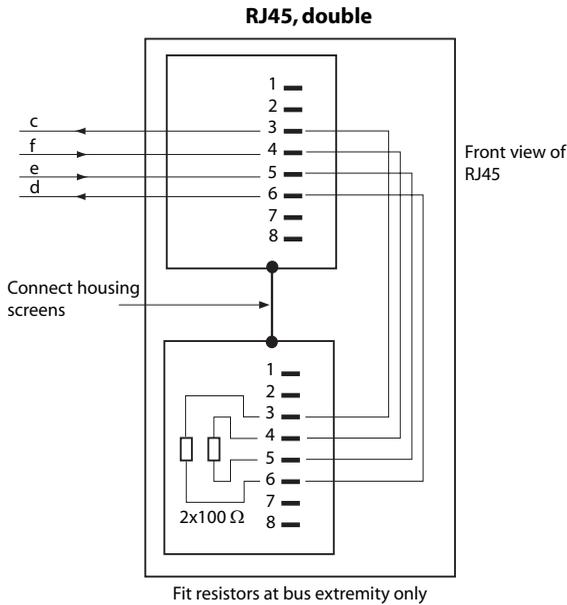
<sup>1)</sup> These values are based on a wire diameter of 0.5 mm.

The number of terminals is the sum of the power requirements of the individual terminals and the power available on the S bus.

## Connection sockets



**Fig. 51** RJ45 connection, single socket



**Fig. 52** RJ45 connection, double socket

## Installation rules

Always terminate the bus extremity with  $2 \times 100 \Omega$  (0.25 W, 5%)!



### Note

Circuit type as per EN/IEC 60950: SELV

## Cable Requirements

**Tab. 54** Requirements for an S bus cable

Core pairs × cores	1 × 4 or 2 × 2
Stranded	yes
Wire diameter, core	0.4...0.6 mm
Screening	recommended
Ohmic resistance	< 98 Ω/km (conductor), < 196 Ω/km (loop)
Characteristic impedance	< 125 Ω (100 kHz), < 115 Ω (1 MHz)
Wave attenuation	< 6 dB/km (100 kHz), < 26 dB/km (1 MHz)
Near / crosstalk attenuation	> 54 dB/100 m (1 kHz to 1 MHz)

## Terminals

The ETSI protocol must be set in the interface configuration.

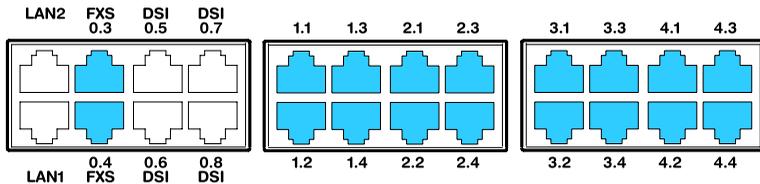
Up to 8 terminals of different types can be connected to one S bus.

- Standard ISDN terminals
- ISDN Terminal Adapter
- PC with ISDN card
- Group 4 fax machines<sup>1)</sup>, etc.

Two call connections are possible simultaneously for each S bus.

### 4.7.3.3 FXS terminal interfaces

The FXS terminal interfaces of the mainboard are permanently routed to the front panel and labelled accordingly. With the appropriate interface cards and Wiring Adapters, additional FXS terminal interfaces can also be made available at the RJ45 sockets 1.x...4.x (with Aastra 415 only 1.x and 2.x). The possible RJ45 sockets are highlighted in colour in the figure below.

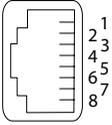
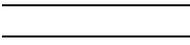
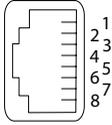


**Fig. 53** Connection possibilities for FXS terminal interfaces

<sup>1)</sup> Not possible within an AIN

## Connection

**Tab. 55** Connection of FXS terminal interfaces

Communication server			Cable cores	Connection socket		
Socket	Pin	Analogue signal		Analogue signal	Pin	Socket
	1	-		-	1	
	2	-		-	2	
	3	-		-	3	
	4	a		a	4	
	5	b		b	5	
	6	-		-	6	
	7	-		-	7	
	8	-		-	8	

## Multifunctional FXS interfaces

The analogue interfaces of the FX cards are multifunctional. Depending on the terminal or function they are configured individually in the *Interface configuration* using AMS and switched over internally accordingly.

**Tab. 56** Mode of the FXS interfaces

FXS mode	Connection
<i>Phone/fax</i>	Analogue DTMF and pulse dialling terminals such as phones, fax, modem, answering machines, etc.
<i>Two-wire door</i>	Analogue two-wire door intercom
<i>Control output</i>	Ports for switching external equipment.
<i>Control input</i>	Ports for switching internal switch groups.
<i>General Bell</i>	Commercial auxiliary bells

After a first start all the FXS interfaces are configured on *Phone/fax*.



### Warning

Terminals connected to FXS interfaces can be damaged if the configuration of the FXS interface mode is unsuitable.



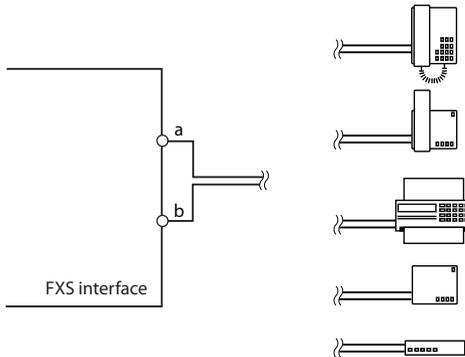
### Note

Circuit type as per EN/IEC 60950: TNV-2

**FXS mode: Phone/fax**

In this mode the following analogue terminals can be connected:

- Analogue phones with DTMF or pulse dialling (earth key is not supported)
- Radio units for cordless phones
- Group 3 fax machines<sup>1)</sup>
- Answering machines
- Modem



**Fig. 54 Connection for FXS mode: Phone/fax**

The no-load voltage at the ports is approx.53 VDC. The loop current is limited to 25 mA.

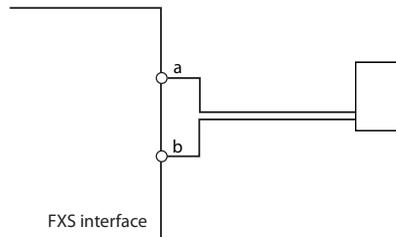
**Tab. 57 Cable requirements for FXS mode: Phone/fax**

	<b>All ports</b>
Core pairs × cores	1 × 2
Stranded	only for lengths > 200 m
Wire diameter, core	0.4 ... 0.8 mm
FXS resistance	max. 2 × 625 Ω
Line length for a wire diameter of 0.6 mm	max. 10 km
Screening	not required

<sup>1)</sup> Transmission with the T.38 protocol is recommended for Fax over IP. The corresponding DSP resources need to be allocated.

## FXS mode: Two-wire door

In this mode two-wire door intercoms with DTMF control functions can be connected. The no-load voltage in this mode is 24 VDC. The loop current is limited to 25 mA.



**Fig. 55** Connection for FXS mode: Two-wire door

**Tab. 58** Cable requirements for FXS mode: Two-wire door

Core pairs × cores	1 × 2
Stranded	only for lengths > 200 m
Wire diameter, core	0.4 ... 0.8 mm
FXS resistance	max. $2 \times 200 \Omega$
Line length for a wire diameter of 0.6 mm	max. 3 km
Screening	not required

## FXS mode: Control output

If an FXS interface is configured as a control output, the signal can be used to control external devices or equipment (e. g. heating system, alarm system or outdoor lighting system).

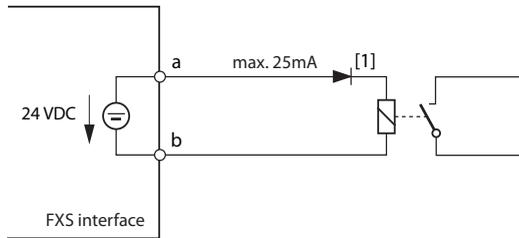
The no-load voltage is 24 VDC; the current is limited to 25 mA. A connected relay must be of the type 24 VDC and must not draw more than 300 mW in power.

There are no special requirements for the cables.



### Warning

Control outputs must have a floating connection.



[1] The diode is necessary, in order to avoid unwanted voltages at the control output during the the start-up phase of the communication server.

**Fig. 56 Connection for FXS mode: Control output**



### See also

Besides the control outputs on FXS interfaces control outputs on ODAB cards can also be used to control external devices and equipment (see "Equipment on the ODAB options card", page 122).

## FXS mode: Control input

If FXS interfaces are configured as control inputs, one or more of the switch groups 1...20 can be switched between position 1, 2 and 3. An external switch or a relay is connected for this purpose. An LED can be connected to the circuit to indicate the switch state. The no-load voltage is 24 VDC; the current is limited to 25mA.

The permissible switch and loop resistances are as follows:

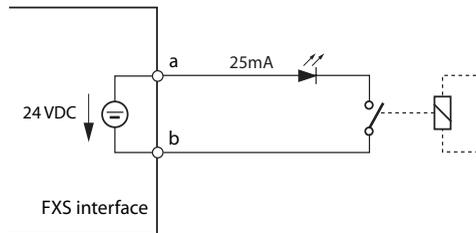
- Active state (On):  $< 1\text{ k}\Omega$
- Passive state (Off):  $> 4\text{ k}\Omega$

There are no special requirements for the cables.



### Warning

Control inputs must have a floating connection.



**Fig. 57 Connection for FXS mode: Control input**

In the switch group configuration in AMS the ports are assigned to the control inputs of a switch group. To be able to control all 3 switch positions of a switch group, you need 2 control inputs which switch the switch position of the switch group depending on the status.

**Tab. 59 Switch group control via the control inputs**

<i>FXS control input 1</i>	<i>FXS control input 2</i>	<i>Switch positions of the switch group</i>
Off	Off	Position 1
On	Off	Position 2
Random	On	Position 3

Other conditions:

- The same control inputs can control one or more switch groups.
- The same switch group can only be switched by the 2 assigned control inputs.
- Control of the switch groups using the control inputs takes priority over control using function codes.

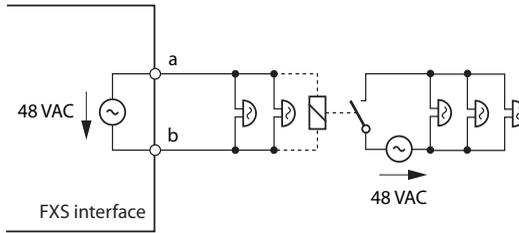


### See also

The control inputs of ODAB cards can also be used to control switch groups (see "Equipment on the ODAB options card", page 122).

## **FXS mode: General Bell**

One FXS interface per communication server can be configured for the connection of a general bell. It is possible to use commercial auxiliary bells designed for connection in parallel to analogue terminals as a general bell. However the impedance of the connected general bell (or total impedance in the case of several devices connected in parallel) must not fall below 1 k $\Omega$ . The ringing voltage is 48 VAC. An 48 V AC relay must be interposed if connecting a large number of auxiliary bells.



**Fig. 58 Connection for FXS mode: General Bell**



**See also**

"General bell on FXS interface" in the "System Functions and Features" System Manual.

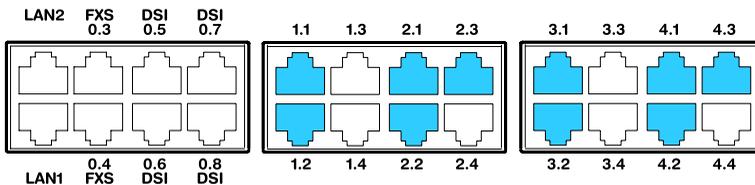
### 4. 7. 4 Equipment on the ODAB options card

The ODAB options card contains the following equipment:

- 1 analogue terminal interface for connecting a door intercom
- Control outputs and control inputs for connecting a door intercom and/or other purposes.

With the aid of jumpers the options card is configured for connecting a door intercom or provides control inputs and control outputs:

- In the configuration as a door intercom the option card must be fitted to slot IC2 (Aastra 415) or IC4 (Aastra 430). The interfaces are then available at RJ45 sockets 2.1...2.3 (Aastra 415) and 4.1...4.3 (Aastra 430).
- If the option card is used for other purposes, it must be fitted to slot IC1 (Aastra 415) and IC1...3 (Aastra 430). The RJ45 socket x.1 then provides two control outputs and the RJ45 socket x.2 two control inputs.
- The possible RJ45 sockets are highlighted in colour in the figure below.



**Fig. 59 Interfaces of the ODAB options card**

### 4. 7. 4. 1 Connection of a door intercom (TFE)

If the options card is fitted to slot IC2 (Aastra 415) or slot IC4 (Aastra 430), an analogue terminal interface is available for connecting a door intercom.

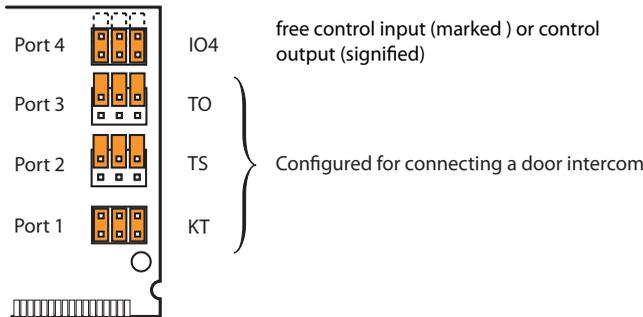


**Note:**

This analogue terminal interface cannot be used for other purposes as the software does not support it.

#### Jumper Configuration

The jumper configuration is shown in the following diagram. Three of the four IO ports are used for connecting the door intercom. A control input or a control output is available for other purposes.



**Fig. 60 Jumper configuration for connecting a door intercom**

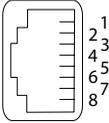
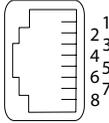
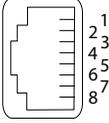
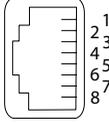


**Note**

If the options card is fitted to slot IC2 (Aastra 415) or slot IC4 (Aastra 430), the jumpers of ports Port 1, 2 and 3 must be fitted as shown in Fig. 60.

**Tab. 60 Connection in slot 2 (Aastra 415) or slot 4 (Aastra 430)**

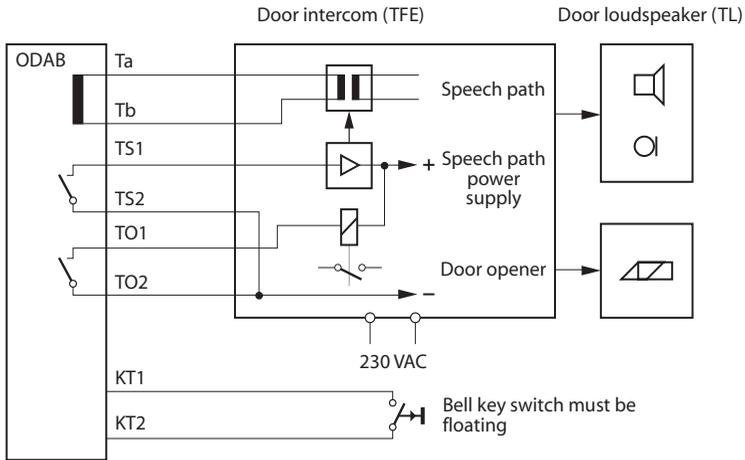
RJ45		Communica- tion server	RJ45		Communica- tion server
Socket X1	Pin	Signal	Socket X3	Pin	Signal

RJ45		Communication server	RJ45		Communication server
	1	-		1	-
	2	-		2	-
	3	KT1		3	-
	4	TS2		4	Ta
	5	TS1		5	Tb
	6	KT2		6	-
	7	-		7	-
	8	-		8	-
	Socket X2	Pin		Signal	Socket X4
	1	-		1	-
	2	-		2	-
	3	TO2		3	-
	4	IO4		4	-
	5	IO4		5	-
	6	TO1		6	-
	7	-		7	-
	8	-		8	-

**Tab. 61 Connections for the options card ODAB**

IO port	Connection	Function	Value
-	Ta, Tb	Connection for two-wire door intercom system signal	600 Ω
1	KT 1, 2	Bell input	40 V / 4 mA
2	TS1, 2	Floating contact, "Switch on / off power supply for door intercom system"	max. 24 VAC, 30 VDC, 1 A
3	TO1, 2	Floating contact, "Door release"	max. 24 VAC, 30 VDC, 1 A

## Connection for door intercom with 600 Ohm speech path



**Fig. 61 Schematic circuit diagram**

Points to be observed for the connection:

- The door intercom system requires an external power supply.
- The signal circuit does not require a power supply.
- The speech path (DC-free) is connected to Ta and Tb.
- The door intercom system is switched on via the TS contact output.
- The door release is actuated via the TO contact output.



### Warning

The bell key switch does not require an external power supply, but must have a floating connection.

The free port IO4 can be used as a floating control output or as a control input. Configured as a control output (O4) an external device or an external equipment can be connected. Configured as a control input (I4) one or more switch groups can be switched between position 1 and 2. Otherwise the same statements apply as described in the following Chapter "Control outputs and control inputs".

**Tab. 62 Switch group control via the control inputs**

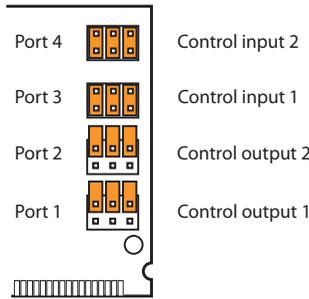
Control input I4	Switch positions of the switch groups
Passive state (Off)	Position 1
Active state (On)	Position 2

### 4.7.4.2 Control outputs and control inputs

If the options card is fitted to slot IC1 (Aastra 415) or slot IC1, 2 or 3 (Aastra 430), the analogue terminal interface cannot be used. However two control inputs can be used for switching a switch group and two control outputs for controlling external devices or equipment.

#### Jumper Configuration

The jumper configuration is shown in the following diagram.



**Fig. 62** Jumper configuration for control outputs and control inputs

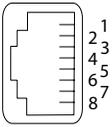
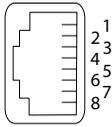


#### Note

If the options card is fitted in slot IC1 (Aastra 415) or slot IC1, 2 or 3 (Aastra 430), the jumpers must be fitted as shown in Fig. 62.

**Tab. 63** Connection in slot IC1 (Aastra 415) or slot IC1, 2 or 3 (Aastra 430)

RJ45		Communication server	RJ45		Communication server
Socket X1	Pin	Signal	Socket X3	Pin	Signal
	1	-		1	-
	2	-		2	-
	3	O1-1		3	-
	4	O2-1		4	-
	5	O2-2		5	-
	6	O1-2		6	-
	7	-		7	-
	8	-		8	-

RJ45		Communication server	RJ45		Communication server
Socket X2	Pin	Signal	Socket X4	Pin	Signal
	1	–		1	–
	2	–		2	–
	3	I3-1		3	–
	4	I4-1		4	–
	5	I4-2		5	–
	6	I3-2		6	–
	7	–		7	–
	8	–		8	–

**Tab. 64** Connections of control inputs and outputs

IO port	Signal	Function
1	O1-1, O1-2	Floating contact, relay 1
2	O2-1, O2-2	Floating contact, relay 2
3	I3-1, I3-2	Control input 1
4	I4-1, I4-2	Control input 2

### Freely connectable relay contacts

The two freely connectable relay contacts can be used to control external devices or equipment such as heating, alarm or outdoor lighting systems (possibly via external relay for 230 VAC).

There are no special requirements for the cables.

**Tab. 65** Relay operating data

Parameter	Value
Number of changeover switches per relay	1
Insulation between the changeover switches	0.5 kV
Type of contact	no (normally open, NO contact, make contact)
max. contact loading	24 VDC, 30 VAC, 1 A

### Switch group interface

The routing elements of switch groups 1..20 are controlled via control inputs I3 and I4. Control is effected using external switches (door contacts, time switches, etc.). The signal no-load voltage is approx. 40 VDC, the short-circuit current approx. 4 mA.

The permissible switch and loop resistances are as follows:

- Active state (On): < 4.5 k $\Omega$
- Passive state (Off): > 11 k $\Omega$



### Warning

The control inputs do not require an external power supply but they must have a floating connection.

There are no special requirements for the cables.

**Tab. 66** Switch group control via the control inputs

Control input I3	Control input I4	Switch positions of the switch groups
Off	Off	Position 1
On	Off	Position 2
Random	On	Position 3

Other conditions:

- The switch group configuration determines which of the switch groups 1...20 are switched.
- An options card's control inputs can control one or more switch groups.
- The same switch group can only be switched by the control inputs of one options card.
- Control of the switch groups using the control inputs takes priority over control using function codes.

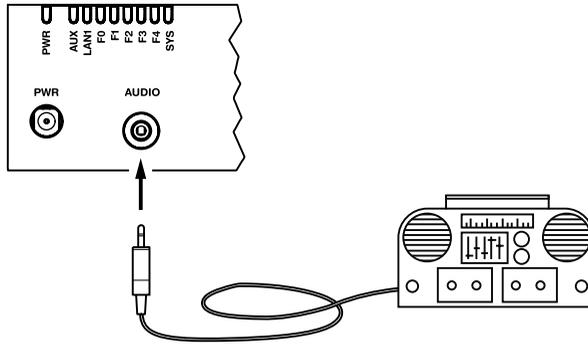
## 4.7.5 Audio interface

The audio interface can be used for the following purposes:

- to play music or an announcement to connections with callers on hold ("Music on hold" function).
- to play music or an announcement for the announcement service (announcement prior to answering), voice mail greetings or for "Music on hold" and then to store it as a wave file.

Any playback equipment (tape recorder, CD player, etc.) with a line output can be used as the audio source.

The customer is responsible for all copyright matters relating to any music playback.



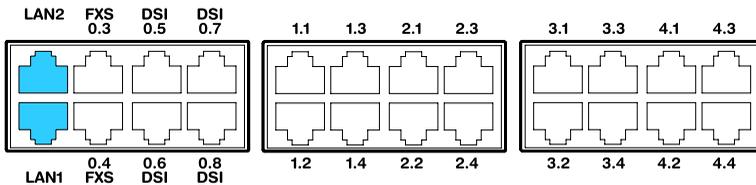
**Fig. 63 Audio interface**

**Tab. 67 Technical data of the audio interface**

Input impedance	approx. 15 kΩ
Input level	0.1...5 V (configurable in 8 levels via AMS)
Input circuit	asymmetrical
Output resistance audio source	< 1 kΩ
Installation cable	NF cable screened (required for low levels)
Socket	3.5 mm stereo jack
Circuit type	as per EN/IEC 60950: SELV

## 4.7.6 Ethernet interfaces

The Aastra 415/430 communication server have a 2-port LAN switch 10/100 Base T. The Ethernet interfaces are permanently routed to the front panel and labelled accordingly. The RJ45 sockets are highlighted in colour in the figure below.



**Fig. 64 Connection possibilities for Ethernet interfaces**

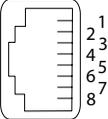


**Note**

Circuit type as per EN/IEC 60950: SELV

## Connection

**Tab. 68 Connection of Ethernet interfaces**

RJ45 socket	Pin	Signal
	1	Tx+
	2	Tx-
	3	Rx+
	4	—
	5	—
	6	Rx-
	7	—
	8	—

## Settings

The IP address can either be taken from a DHCP server in the IP network or configured statically. If a DNS server is used, the communication server can also be addressed via its host name.

**Tab. 69 Default values, IP address**

Parameter	Parameter value
IP address	192.168.104.13
Subnet mask	255.255.255.0
Gateway	0.0.0.0
DHCP	Yes
Host name	<Model name>-<MAC address> <sup>1)</sup> Example: Aastra430-00085d803100

<sup>1)</sup> This entry is hidden and does not appear in the parameter's input field

## First-start response

The IP addressing after a first start depends on whether a static IP addressing is already stored on the EIM card from a previous configuration. A static IP addressing (IP address, subnet mask, gateway) entered manually is stored on the EIM card and remains available after a first start. This means that the communication server remains accessible via Ethernet interface in the same way as before the first start.

If no IP addressing is entered on the EIM card (e. g. after initial delivery), the communication server is started with DHCP after a first start. The communication server tries to log on with the DHCP server and to enter its host name on the DNS server. If the logon is successful the communication server is accessible via the host name. If the logon to the DHCP server fails, the communication server deactivates DHCP temporarily and can be accessed via the static default value address. The communication server is then accessible with a direct connection via the IP address.

**Note:**

DHCP is deactivated only temporarily and is reactivated after a subsequent restart.

## Cable types

The Ethernet switch on the communications server features Auto MDI/MDIX. With the automatic detection straight or crossover LAN cables can be used for all connection types.

## Configuration

On the AMS Configuration Manager the Ethernet interfaces routed to the front panel can be configured individually. The following settings are possible:

**Tab. 70 Configuration possibilities for Ethernet interfaces**

Parameter	Parameter value
Speed/mode	<Automatic, 100M/full-duplex, 100M/half-duplex, 10M/full-duplex, 10M/half-duplex>
MDI	<Auto MDI/MDIX, MDI (straight), MDIX (crossed)>

## Status LED

The status of the Ethernet interface LAN1 is indicated on the LED display panel (see "LED display", page 188).

## Cable requirements

Use commercial Cat. 5 cable, or choose a cable type with the following characteristics:

**Tab. 71 Requirements for an Ethernet cable**

Core pairs × cores	2 × 2 (for short distances also 1 × 4)
Stranded	yes
Wire diameter, core	0.4...0.6 mm
Screening	yes
Category	Cat. 5 minimum

## 4.8 Installing, powering and connecting terminals

### 4.8.1 Digital system phones

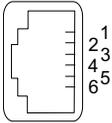
#### 4.8.1.1 General information

##### Accesses

The connections on the underside of the system phones are identified by the symbols. The meaning of the symbols is described in the corresponding operating instructions.

##### DSI terminal interface

Tab. 72 DSI interface on the phone

RJ45 socket	Pin	Signal
	1	—
	2	—
	3	b
	4	a
	5	—
	6	—



##### Note:

The total length of the cables from the communication server to the system phone must not be less than 10 m.

##### Terminal selection

Two system phones can be connected to a DSI interface (DSI-AD2 only). The system can only differentiate the two system phones by the position of the address switch on the phone. The following settings are possible (TSD = Terminal Selection Digit):

- TSD1
- TSD2



##### Note:

In the following cases *Not Configured* is displayed along with the node number, the slot number and the port number. In this state the system phone is not ready for operation:

- A terminal has been created at the connected port, but the address selection switch is incorrectly set.
- No terminal has yet been created at the connected port.

## User allocation

In the configuration each terminal is assigned to a user or a free seating pool. If a terminal has been created at the connected port and the address selection switch is correctly selected but no user or free seating pool is allocated to the terminal, the system phone display reads *No Number* and indicates the terminal ID. In this state the system phone is not ready for operation.

## Terminal type

The terminal type is specified along with the configuration of the system. when the lines are also assigned to the line keys.



### Note:

If the terminal type configured is incorrect, the system phone display shows the warning *Wrong phone type*. On the Office 10 the LED flashes slowly. In this situation, although the system phone can be used for basic telephone operations, none of the added features will be available. The terminal type must be entered via the AMS Configuration Manager or on the terminal via login to the system configuration.

Carrying out a logon on the system phone:

- Office 10: Press the Foxkey twice.
- All other system phones: Long keypress (long click) on a function key. *Set new phone type* appears next. Confirm with Foxkey *Yes*.

### 4. 8. 1. 2      Aastra 5360/5361/5370/5380

These IP system phones can be both desktop-mounted and wall-mounted.

## Mounting the phone

The following points are described in detail in the User's Guides for Aastra 5360/5361/5370/5380:

- Set-up as a desk phone (choice of two different set-up angles)
- Wall mounting
- Connecting one or more Aastra M530 or Aastra M535 expansion key modules.
- Connection of a headset to DHSG standard.



### Note:

To prevent any damage to the phone, always disconnect the phone from the power supply first before connecting a headset to DHSG standard.

## Mounting the Bluetooth module

The Aastra 5380 can also be equipped with a Bluetooth module as an option. To install (see Fig. 65), proceed as follows:

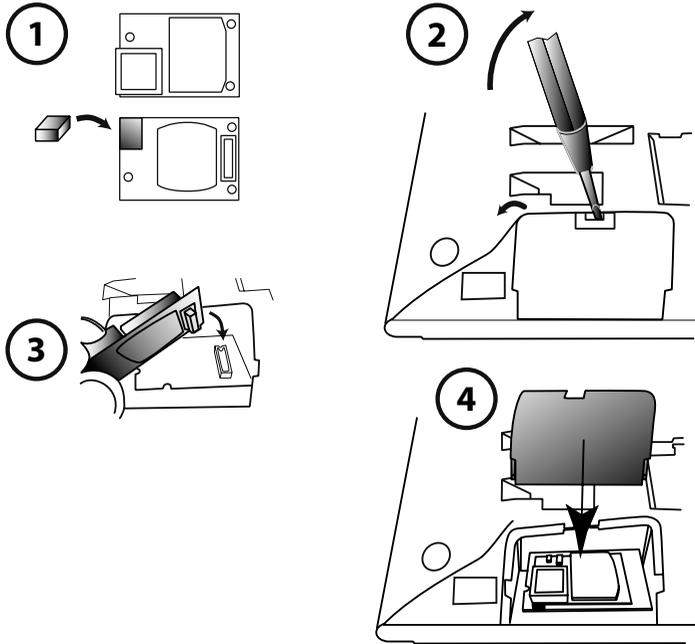


Fig. 65 Assembly of the Bluetooth module



### Warning

The system's reliability can be adversely affected by electrostatic discharges caused by touching electronic components and elements, and subsequent damage can result. Always observe the ESD guidelines.

1. Fit foam spacers on the connector side of the Bluetooth module (for the position of the foam spacer see ①). The spacer ensures that the Bluetooth module sits securely.
2. Carefully remove the cover for the Bluetooth module on the underside of the phone using a suitable screwdriver (see ②).
3. Connect the Bluetooth module. Make sure it is securely fitted (see ③).
4. Fit the cover for the Bluetooth module back into place and press home until it snaps into place (see ④).

## Powering the phone

The Aastra 5360, Aastra 5361 Aastra 5370 and Aastra 5380 system phones are normally powered via the DSI bus. However there are several reasons that require powering with a plug-in power supply:

- Long line
- 2 phones on the same bus
- 1 or more expansion key modules on the phone
- Terminal power supply of the communication server is overloaded

Only use the corresponding plug-in power supply unit with FCC connector available as an option. It is connected either to the phone itself or, when using one or more expansion key modules, on the last expansion key module.



### See also

The power available on the DSI bus depending on the line length and the wire diameter, and the power input of the system phones are described in the chapter "[Terminal interfaces DSI](#)", page 105.

## Connecting the phone

1. Setting the DSI bus address on the system phone's underside:
  - TSD1 = address switch on position 1
  - TSD2 = address switch on position 2
2. Plug the connector into the socket-outlet.
3. If the system is configured, test the operation of the system phone.
4. Label the phone as indicated in the operating instructions.

### 4. 8. 1. 3 Office 25, Office 35, and Office 45/45pro

These system phones are desktop models. A wall-mounted bracket is available as an option for Office 25 and Office 35.

## Mounting the desktop model

Connect the handset cord and the phone cord to the phone as indicated in the operating instructions.

### Installing the wall-mounted bracket (optional)

The wall assembly set consists of a baseplate, a wall plate and fastening screws (see Fig. 66).

1. Secure the wall plate to the wall using the three longer screws. Feed the cord through the middle opening on the wall plate (see ①).
2. Remove the 4 plastic feet on the underside of the phone (see ②).
3. Secure the baseplate of the wall assembly set to the underside of the terminal using the 2 shorter screws (see ③).
4. Suspend the baseplate with the phone onto the wall plate from above (see ④) and tilt downwards until it snaps into place (see ⑤).
5. Plug the phone cord into the phone (see ⑥).

### Powering the phone

The system phones Office 25, Office 35, and Office 45 are powered via the DSI line. The system phones Office 45pro need to be powered externally with a plug-in power supply. Only use the corresponding plug-in power supply unit with FCC connector.

### Connecting the phone

1. Set the DSibus address under the system phone's designation label.
  - TSD1 = Address switch not pressed (disengaged)
  - TSD2 = Address switch pressed (engaged)
2. Plug the connector into the socket-outlet.
3. If the system is configured, test the operation of the system phone.
4. Label the phone as indicated in the operating instructions.

### Connecting the expansion key module or the alphanumerical keyboard

The connection of the expansion key modules and the alphanumerical keyboard to Office 35 and Office 45 is described in the relevant operating instructions.

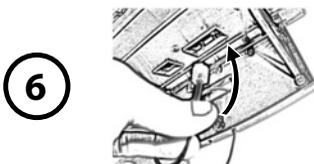
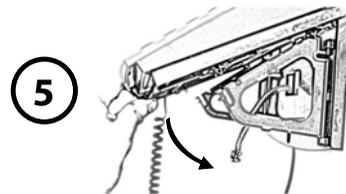
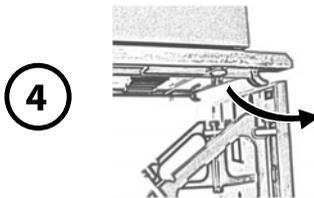
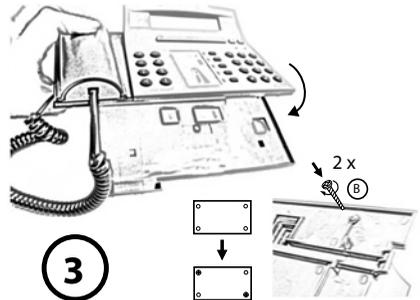
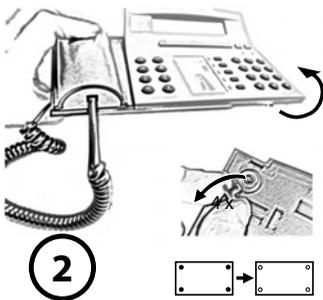
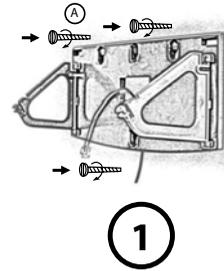
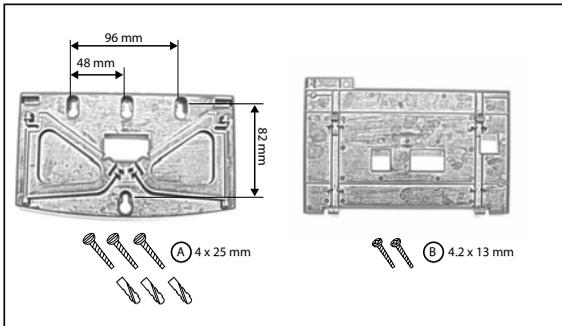


Fig. 66 Wall mounting of Office 25 and Office 35

### 4.8.1.4 Office 10

The terminal is a desktop model. A wall-mounted bracket is available as an option.

#### Mounting the desktop model

1. Feed the connecting cable through the strain relief on the handset rest.
2. Position the handset rest as required and put the handset in place.

#### Installing the wall-mounted bracket (optional)

1. Feed the connecting cable through the strain relief on the wall-mounted bracket.
2. Screw the wall-mounted bracket onto the wall using the screws supplied and hook the handset into position.

#### Powering the phone

The terminal is powered via the DSI line.

#### Connecting the phone

1. Set the DSI bus address (Fig. 67).
2. Plug the connector into the socket-outlet.
3. If the system is configured, test the operation of the terminal.
4. Label terminal.



Fig. 67 Set the DSI bus address

**Note:**

Make sure the TSD (address switch) is pushed in as far as the stop or the switchover will not function correctly.

## 4.8.2 DECT radio units and cordless phones

The locations determined for the cordless phones, charging bays and radio units during the planning phase need to be checked against the following criteria:

- Influence on radio operation
- Ambient conditions

### Influences on radio operation

Radio operation is affected by the following influences:

- Outside interference (EMC)
- Obstacles in the surrounding area affect the radio characteristic

To achieve optimum conditions for radio operation, observe the following points:

- Optimum radio operation depends on the radio unit → cordless phone line of sight.
- Walls act as an obstacle to the propagation of radio waves. Losses depend on the wall thickness, construction material and reinforcement used.
- Do not place radio units and cordless phones in the immediate vicinity of TV sets, radios, CD players or power installations (for reasons of EMC, e.g. distribution boxes, rising power lines).
- Do not place radio units and cordless phones near X-ray installations (EMC).
- Do not place radio units and cordless phones near metal partitions.
- Observe the minimum distance requirements between adjacent radio units (see [Fig. 69](#)).
- Minimum distance between cordless phones for fault-free operation: 0.2 m. (The charging bays of the Office 135 can be linked using connecting strips. However, operating several phones on interconnected charging bays can lead to malfunctions.)
- Minimum distance between charging bays with cordless phones on-hook for fault-free operation: 0.2 m.

## Ambient conditions

- When installing: Ensure convection (space for ventilation).
- Avoid excessive dust.
- Avoid exposure to chemicals.
- Avoid direct sunlight.
- See also technical data in [Tab. 131](#).



### Note:

If these requirements cannot be met (e.g. outdoor installation), use the appropriate protective housing.

### 4.8.2.1 Installing the radio units

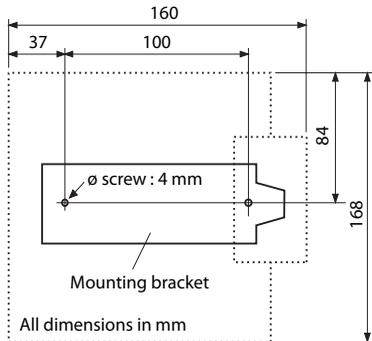
Do **not** remove the cover of the radio unit. (Warranty protection will lapse if the cover is removed)

Fit the mounting bracket (see [Fig. 68](#) dimensional drawing for wall mounting). Observe the minimum distances (see [Fig. 69](#)).

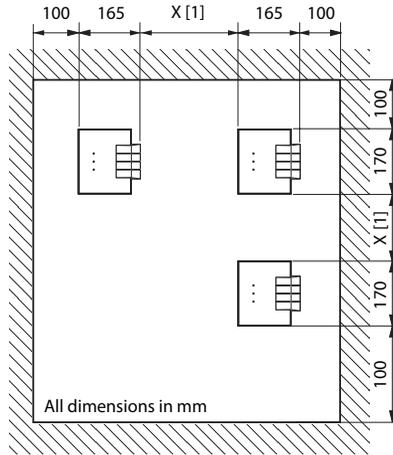
Position the DSI socket(s) near the radio unit.

Each radio unit requires one DSI bus (two optional on the SB-8): Do not connect any other terminals.

The radio units can be powered from the communication server up to the maximum line length of 1200 m specified for operation (wire diameter 0.5 mm). The plug-in power supply unit for is the same as the one for the Office 135 charging bay.



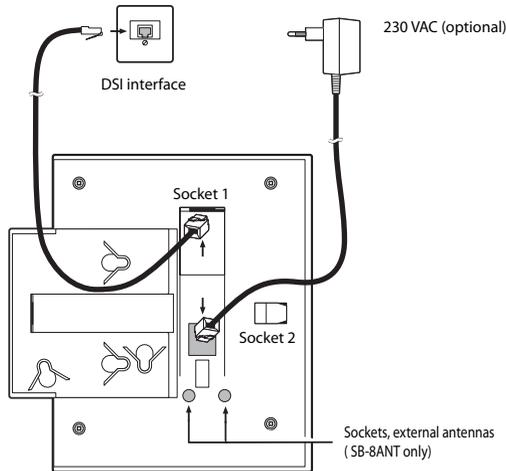
**Fig. 68** Dimensional drawing for wall-mounting the mounting bracket



- [1] X = 200: Minimum distance if the radio units are connected to the same communication server (synchronous)
  - X = 2000: Minimum distance if the radio units are not connected to the same communication server (not synchronous)
- Make sure the minimum distances are observed

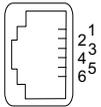
**Fig. 69** Installation distances

## Connecting the radio unit



**Fig. 70** Underside of the radio units with connection points

**Tab. 73 Connections on the Aastra DECT radio units**

RJ12 sockets	Pin	Socket 1: DSI interface		Socket 2: Power supply
		SB-4+	SB-8 / SB-8ANT	SB-4+ / SB-8 / SB-8ANT
	1	Local power supply -	Local power supply -	Local power supply -
	2	—	b2	—
	3	b1	b1	—
	4	a1	a1	—
	5	—	a2	—
6	Local power supply +	Local power supply +	Local power supply +	

If an SB-8 / SB-8ANT is operated on two DSI interfaces, it is recommended always to use two neighbouring ports.



### Aastra Intelligent Net:

As the DECT systems of the individual nodes in an AIN do not run synchronously, the two DSI interfaces of an SB-8 / SB-8ANT must always be connected to the same node.

**Tab. 74 Operating state display on Aastra DECT radio units**

LED flashing (two LEDs on the SB-8)	Information
green	Operating state
red / green	Startup procedure running
orange	Transmission of DECT sequences
red	Fault
not flashing and not lit	LED switched off or radio unit defective or not in operation

For further display variants, see ["Operating state of the Aastra DECT radio units", page 220](#)

## 4.8.3 IP system phones

The installation, powering and connection of the IP system phones Aastra 5360ip, Aastra 5361ip, Aastra 5370ip, Aastra 5380ip and Aastra 2380ip are described in the System Manual "Aastra Intelligent Net (AIN) and IP system phones".

## 4.8.4 OIP applications

The operating requirements and installation instructions for the OIP applications Aastra 1560/1560ip, Office 1560/1560IP, OfficeSuite and Office eDial are described in the System Manual "Open Interfaces Platform".

### **4. 8. 5     Aastra SIP and standard SIP phones**

The registration of SIP system phones of the Aastra 6700i series, other Aastra SIP terminals and SIP terminals by other manufacturers as internal users is described in the "SIP and SIP terminals" System Manual.

### **4. 8. 6     Mobile phones**

The integration of mobile phones in the Aastra 400 communication system is described in the System Manual "System Functions and Features".

## 5 Configuration

**This chapter introduces the configuration tool Aastra Management Suite (AMS) with its managers and auxiliary applications. With the modular Aastra Management Suite, the installer is able to configure and service the communication server and its ancillary equipment centrally, online or offline. In addition, the access types are presented and user access control is discussed. Other topics in this chapter include remote access, data exchange between PC and communication server, and configuration steps.**

### 5.1 AMS Configuration Tool

The Aastra Management Suite (AMS) is a software package used for the configuration and monitoring of a single system or an entire network. The configuration can be prepared offline and locally or remotely loaded to the configuration server. Remote access means that changes and expansions can be carried out independently of time and location, and is used for the remote maintenance of the system.



**Note:**

AMS is backwards compatible, i. e. configuration servers with an older software release can also be configured with a more recent AMS version.



**See also:**

The Application Notes and Frequently Asked Questions (FAQs) in connection with AMS can be downloaded from <https://pbxweb.aastra.com>

#### 5.1.1 AMSShell

The AMS shell is used to administer the communication servers, replicate the nodes of an Aastra Intelligent Net (AIN) and set the access parameters. The numbering plan of a private leased-line network can also be specified here across all the nodes. Other useful functions available include *Backup* and *Restore*, *Upload* and *Download* and audio data management.



**See also:**

How to operate AMS and the individual functions are described in detail in AMS help.

AMS comprises several functional software modules. These are the AMS Managers and auxiliary applications. Most are operated centrally from the AMS Shell.

## 5.1.2 AMS manager

The table below shows the main properties and functions of the individual AMS Managers:

**Tab. 75 Overview of AMS managers**

Symbol	Manager	Function
	Configuration Manager (CM)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Configure system and customer data offline</li> <li>• Configure system and customer data online (via local access, dial-up access or LAN)</li> <li>• Adapt system or customer data flexibly and quickly</li> </ul>
	Fault & Maintenance Manager (FM)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Configure remote alarming</li> <li>• Display, evaluate and analyse event messages</li> </ul>
	Account Manager (AM)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Configuration of OCL and ICL data</li> <li>• Configuration of the OCL and ICL output interface</li> <li>• Recording of ICC data per user, network interface or cost centre (totalizer only)</li> <li>• Configuration and allocation of the surcharge calculator to the ICC counters</li> <li>• Data import from LCR tables</li> <li>• LCR management</li> </ul>
	Hotel Manager (HM)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check-in and check-out</li> <li>• Configure room telephones</li> <li>• Acquisition and printout of call charges</li> <li>• Room management (room available, occupied)</li> <li>• Wake-up calls for guests</li> </ul>
	Information Manager (IM)	Information Manager (IM) supports the customers with helpful offline documentation.
	Upload Manager (UM)	The Upload Manager (UM) is used to update the software of a system from the PC.
	System Event Manager (SEM)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comprehensive centralized monitoring of event messages</li> <li>• Installation on several PCs possible</li> <li>• Particularly well suited for monitoring networked systems</li> <li>• Receives and processes messages via ISDN or TCP / IP</li> </ul>

The AMS- Managers are called up via the *Manager* or using an icon on the toolbar (Exception: SEM is called up via the Windows Start menu or by means of the icon in the Windows taskbar).

The following table shows which Managers are password protected and which are available offline or online.

**Tab. 76 Availability of AMS Managers**

Manager	Before Log in	After Log in	After Log in and Connect (offline)	After Log in and Connect (online)
Configuration Manager (CM)			✓	✓
Fault & Maintenance Manager (FM)			✓	✓
Account Manager (AM)			✓	✓
Hotel Manager (HM)			✓	✓
Information Manager (IM)	✓	✓	✓	✓
Upload Manager (UM)		✓	✓	✓

### 5. 1. 3 Auxiliary applications

#### System Search

The auxiliary application System Search is started via *Tools / System Search* or by using the  icon in the menu bar. System Search is a help tool for detecting communication servers of the Aastra 400 series in the IP network. System Search finds all individual communication servers connected to the IP network, provided they are in the same subnetwork as the PC with AMS and have at least SW version 17.



**See also:**

Additional information about System Search can be found in AMS help.

#### Smart Software Update

The auxiliary application Smart Software Update can be started via the Windows Start menu or by means of the  icon in the Windows taskbar.

If the Internet connection is active, by pressing a button this application automatically downloads the most current SW package (Software for communication server, system phones, DECT radio units, WebAdmin etc) for the required communication server and sales channels from the download server.

If the communication server is in the first-start state (from the factory or first-start executed) and you establish a connection with AMS to the communication server, the SW version of the communication server is automatically compared to the last version downloaded from the download server. If the communication server software is older, an update is suggested.

#### Aastra WAV Converter

If the integrated voice mail system is operated in expanded mode, all the audio data must be available in compressed G.729 format. To be able to continue using existing, uncompressed voice messages and greetings in G.711 format, you need to

compress the message and greetings first. The Aastra WAV Converter  is provided for this very purpose in the AMS shell under *Tools / Managing audio data*.

## Aastra Hospitality Manager

The Aastra Hospitality Manager is a web-based application for receptionists in the hospitality sector. It provides a clear, at-a-glance list view or floor-by-floor view of the rooms and features functions such as check-in, check-out, notification, wake-up call, retrieval of call charges, maintenance list, etc. It is integrated in WebAdmin and subject to a licence.

## WebAdmin

This web-based configuration tool is available for the online configuration of Aastra 400 series communication servers. It provides a simple, user-friendly interface and an online help, and with its different authorization levels it is aimed at different user groups:

Authorization level *Administrator*:

The Administrator has access to all the views and functions of the configuration tool. It can configure the system's main parameters and show a general configuration assistant and a special hospitality configuration assistant.

*System Assistant* authorization level:

The System Assistant only sees selected views of the configuration tool and the scope of functions is limited.

Authorization level *Hospitality-Administrator*:

The Hospitality Administrator features all the views required to set up the Aastra Hospitality Manager and the reception menu of the Aastra 5380/5380ip and specify its default settings. A link can also be used to start the Aastra Hospitality Manager (see "[Aastra Hospitality Manager](#)", page 147).

Authorization level *Receptionist*:

This access starts the Aastra Hospitality Manager directly (see "[Aastra Hospitality Manager](#)", page 147).

The WebAdmin is included in the file system of each communication server of the Aastra 400 family and does not have to be installed separately.

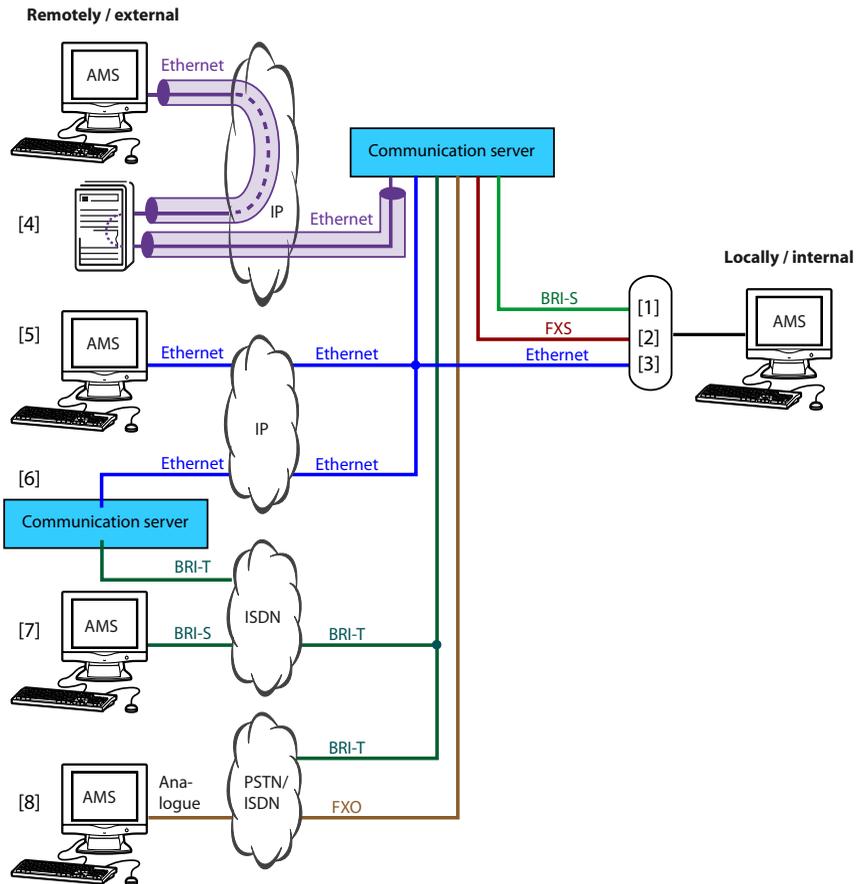


### Note:

With the web-based administration two users are able to access the same communication server simultaneously - and no fewer than five users at the Receptionist authorization level. Of these one user can access with AMS. This can cause confusion if a configuration is being carried out in the same places.

## 5.2 Access types

There are the following possibilities to access the communication server with AMS:



- [1] Internal dial-up access via an BRI-S terminal interface
- [2] Internal dial-up access via an analogue terminal interface FXS
- [3] Internal access via the LAN or directly
- [4] External access via SRM (secure IP remote management)
- [5] External access via IP network
- [6] External dial-up access via dial-in node (only in AIN)
- [7] External dial-up access via ISDN connection via a BRI-T network interface
- [8] External dial-up access via analogue connection through a BRI-T or FXO network interface

**Fig. 71 Overview of the access types**



### See also:

Detailed information can be found in the AMS Help.

## 5.3 User Access Control

Access to the configuration is password-protected. Any user wanting to log in to a communication server is prompted for his user name and password (access data).

### 5.3.1 User accounts and authorization profiles

A user's authorizations are regulated by authorization profiles, which are assigned to the user accounts.

#### 5.3.1.1 Default user account

The default user account (*admin*) and several default authorization profiles are created when a new communication server is opened or after a first start. The default user account is linked with the authorization profile *Administrator*. This authorization profile is assigned the administration rights for the *User access control* for *Audio services* and for AMS at the *Installer* authorization level.

The required user accounts and authorization profiles can be set up using the default user account.

#### 5.3.1.2 Predefined authorization profiles

There are 6 predefined authorization profiles:

- *Administrator*
- *Systemmanager*
- *Attendant*
- *OIP*
- *1st party CTI user via LAN*
- *Support*

The authorization profiles are assigned administration rights and interface user rights. The allocation of existing authorization profiles can be transferred to other authorization profiles using "Copy & Paste".

**Tab. 77** Predefined authorizations of the authorization profiles

Features	Adminis- trator	System- manager	Attend- ant	OIP	1st party CTI user via LAN	Support
Administration rights						
• User Access Control	✓	–	–	–	–	–
• Audio services	✓	✓	✓	–	–	✓
• AMS authorization level	Installer	System Manager	Attendant	No access	No access	Installer
• WebAdmin authorization level	No access	No access	No access	No access	No access	No access
Interface access						
• OIP	✓	–	–	✓	–	–
• Office 45	✓	✓	✓	–	–	–
• FTP	✓	–	–	–	–	✓
• Monitor	✓	–	–	–	–	✓
• First party CTI	✓	–	–	–	✓	–
• Third-party CTI	✓	–	–	–	–	–
• ATAS	✓	–	–	–	–	–
• Remote maintenance using dial-up access	✓	–	–	–	–	✓
• System Search	✓	–	–	–	–	–
• LDAP service	–	–	–	–	–	–

## 5.3.1.3 Administration rights

The various administration rights enable the following configuration possibilities:

- *User Access Control*
  - Creating new user accounts and authorization profiles
  - Deleting user accounts and authorization profiles
  - Assigning authorization profiles to user accounts
  - Editing the authorizations of authorization profiles
  - Changing the passwords of all user accounts
  - Blocking user accounts
- *Audio services*  
Allows you to record and delete global greetings (voice mail) and welcome announcements (announcement service), and to record and delete audio data for the Music on hold function.
- *AMS-Authorization level*  
Determines the authorization level for handling, accessing and editing the configuration data via AMS, and the software upload authorizations.

**Tab. 78 Authorizations for carrying out AMS functions**

Features	Installer	System Manager	Attendant
• Upload (AMS -> communication server)	✓	-	-
• Download (communication server -> AMS)	✓	✓	✓
• Backup (AMS -> File)	✓	✓	✓
• Restore (File -> AMS)	✓	-	-
• Data export	✓	✓	✓
• Data import	✓	-	-
• Apply basic satellite configuration from AIN	✓	-	-
• AINApply - basic configuration from satellites	✓	-	-
• Set/change sales channel	✓	-	-
• Initialization	✓	-	-
• Restart	✓	-	-
• Status change remote maintenance	✓	✓	✓
• Software upload	✓	-	-

### 5.3.1.4 Interface access

The following interfaces can be enabled or disabled:

- *OIP*  
Allows the OIP server to access the communication server. This authorization is not intended for individual persons.
- *Office 45*  
Allows unlimited access to the configuration data via Office 45 (System Assistant).
- *FTP*  
Allows access to the FTP server of the communication server. Needs to be enabled for software upload.
- *Monitor*  
Allows monitors to access the communication server for fault diagnosis.
- *First party CTI*  
Allows first-party applications to communicate with the communication server via the IP network by means of the CTI interface. This authorization is not intended for individual persons.
- *Third-party CTI*  
Allows third-party applications to communicate with the PBX via the IP network by means of the CTI interface. This authorization is not intended for individual persons.

- **ATAS**  
Allows third-party applications to communicate with the communication server via the IP network by means of the ATAS interface. This authorization is not intended for individual persons.
- **Remote maintenance using dial-up access**  
Allows in principle access to the system by dialling a service number. *Remote maintenance* itself, in the *Maintenance* main menu of the Configuration Manager (CM\_7.1), must be enabled.
- **System Search**  
Allows IP parameters displayed in System Search to be modified directly.
- **LDAP service**  
Allows LDAP clients to access the integrated LDAP server. The LDAP clients can then access the system phone book.

### 5.3.2 Passwords

To ensure that the communication server can only be configured with AMS by authorized personnel, access to both the communication server configuration and the communication server itself is protected by passwords. AMS and communication server password management can be synchronised.



#### Note:

AMS keeps a list of user accounts and their assigned authorization profiles. When AMS is started, a check is carried out to see whether the user's OS name (operating system name) is on the list of user accounts. If so, the user is authorized to configure offline without entering his password (auto login). If the communication server password is identical to the user's password, he can even access the communication server without password and configure online.

#### 5.3.2.1 Default password

To access the default user account (*Default User Account*) enter the following:

**Tab. 79** Default password

User name	admin
Password	33aastra

It is advisable to change the password immediately to prevent unauthorized access to the user access control.

The default password for the communication server and AMS is identical.

**Note:**

It is not possible to configure the communication server with a default password. During the initial commissioning or after initialization you are prompted to change the default password during the connection set-up with the communication server. This ensures that unauthorized personnel cannot manipulate the communication server data from a remote location once access for remote maintenance has been enabled.

### 5.3.2.2 Password syntax

The following rules apply to password selection and spelling:

- A password must consist of a minimum of 8 and a maximum of 10 alphanumeric characters.
- Unlike the user names, the passwords are case sensitive.
- The following special characters can be used: ?, /, <, >, -, +, \*, #, =, ., and space.
- German umlauts (e. g. ä, ö, ü) and other diacritical characters (e.g. é, à, â) are not permitted.
- The standard passwords 1ascotel, 2ascotel, 3ascotel and 4ascotel are not permitted.
- The password must not be the same as the user name.

### 5.3.2.3 Change password

Any user who has been assigned an authorisation profile in which the *User Access Control* administration right is configured to *Yes* is authorised to modify the passwords of all user accounts. It is therefore advisable to assign this administration right restrictively.

Users whose password has been changed are prompted to enter their newly assigned password the next time they log in. The same applies to users whose accounts have been newly created.

Users without the administration right *User access control* can only change their own password.

### 5.3.2.4 Incorrect password

After 15 failed login attempts using incorrect passwords the corresponding user account is blocked; it can then only be reactivated by a user with the *User Access Control* administration right. He then replaces the old password with a new one. The next time he logs in, the corresponding user is prompted to change the password and enter the new one he has been assigned.

### 5.3.2.5 Lost password

If another user has also been defined with the *User Access Control* administration right configured to *Yes*, he can simply overwrite with a new password the password lost by another user. The next time he logs in, the corresponding user is prompted to change the password and enter the new one he has been assigned. If the passwords of all Administrators are lost and if password-free access using an operating system name (auto login) is no longer possible either, it is possible to access locally without a password (see "[Password-free access](#)", page 154)

### 5.3.3 Access using the System Assistant on the Office 45

The System Assistant on the Office 45 has access to the menus with *Attendant* level. The user account under which he logs in must be assigned an authorization profile in which the *Office 45* interface access is enabled. The profile also needs to be assigned the AMS authorization level *Attendant* if the remote access status is to be changed.

### 5.3.4 Password-free access

The control pilot key on the front panel can activate a function that enables via AMS password-free, local access with administration right *User access control*. Local access is then possible using a LAN cable. This is useful for example if all the passwords have been lost. The procedure is described in "[Enabling / disabling password-free access](#)", page 194.

There is no password-free access for remote maintenance.

Password-free access with the System Assistant on the Office 45 is also possible, but without the possibility of changing the status of the remote access.

### 5.3.5 Automatic exit from the configuration

Access to the system configuration will be interrupted if during the set disconnect time (AMS Shell menu: *View / Options* under *Online Connection*) you do not make any changes to a parameter value or do not make use of the navigation system.

### 5.3.6 Access log

An access log is drawn up for each user account so that the history of accesses to the configuration can be tracked. Denied access attempts using erroneous or incorrectly type passwords are also logged.

The logs can be read by any user.

#### Retrieving the log data

The system monitors all the accesses and failed access attempts and saves them in the file system of the communication server. These lists can be retrieved locally or remotely.

#### CLIP verification

If the setting *CLIP required* is set to *Yes* in the configuration, remote retrieval is possible only if the retrieving party logs in using a CLIP. The CLIP number is also recorded by the access log.

#### Entering the processes in the log

Each access attempt generates an entry in the corresponding list.

In the case of a remote maintenance access an entry will not be generated if remote maintenance is barred or if *CLIP required* is set to *Yes* in the configuration and no CLIP is received.

## 5.4 Enabling remote access

With remote access the user is authenticated using his user name and password. The user account must also be assigned an authorization profile in which the interface access *Remote maintenance via dial-up access* is enabled.

## 5.4.1 Access enabled by local users

Remote access can be enabled in three ways:

- Using function codes (see [page 156](#))
- With the AMS Configuration Manager
- Via the System Assistance on the Office 45

It can be revoked again automatically or manually.

All enabling types have equal authorization status. This means that remote access can be enabled using a function code for example, and then barred again using the *Remote maintenance* setting in AMS or with the System Assistant on the Office 45.

When remote maintenance is activated, the event message *Remote maintenance on* is sent to the local printer and to all the terminals registered in message group 8.

Remote access can be enabled or barred using the function codes both from the idle state and the talk state, e. g. after an enquiry.

The authorization to activate / deactivate remote access using function codes can be allocated in the user configuration (*Remote maintenance = Yes*).

After a first start of the communication server, the authorizations of all users are restricted.



### Note:

It is advisable not to keep the remote access authorization permanently activated. This ensures that the communication server data cannot be manipulated from a remote location by unauthorized persons.

## 5.4.2 Function code for remote access

**Tab. 80** Function codes for remote access authorization

Enable / bar a one-off remote access	*754 / #754
Enable / bar a permanent remote access	*753 / #753

When remote access is enabled using function code \*754, access will automatically be barred again once the remote configuration process has been completed. It is possible to bar access manually using #754 before a remote configuration process has been initiated.

Remote access can be enabled permanently using the function code \*753. To bar access, the authorized user must enter the function code #753 manually.

The enabling or barring of remote access authorization using the function code is signalled in each case by an acknowledgement tone.

Remote access authorization can also be enabled or barred in the AMS Configuration Manager or with the System Assistant function on the Office 45, if the relevant authorization has been given.



**Note:**

In a QSIG network it is important to make sure that the authorization to change the remote access is also denied to unauthorized PISN users. Otherwise a PISN user would be able to use an abbreviated dialling number defined for the destination PINX and containing the appropriate function code to change the remote access authorization to the destination PINX.



**Aastra Intelligent Net:**

In an AIN the remote access of all the nodes depends on the setting in the Master. If remote access is enabled in the Master, both the AIN configuration and the offline configuration of the satellites are enabled.

Remote access via an external dial-up connection to the AIN is also secured and has to be explicitly enabled (see "Enabling / disabling the dial-up connection to the AIN", page 195). This is irrespective of whether dial-up access is via a satellite or directly to the Master.

### 5. 4. 3 Function keys for remote access authorization

On system phones (with the exception of Office 10) the function code for enabling remote access authorization can be stored under a function key, providing the user has the appropriate authorization.

The relevant LED lights up if remote access is enabled once or permanently.

The relevant LED goes off as soon as remote access is denied again, either automatically or manually, using the function code or the configuration menu or the AMS Configuration Manager.

**Tab. 81 Menu example of a one-off remote access on the Office 45**

F12:		REMOTE MAINT.	ONCE ONLY
OK	BACK		? v

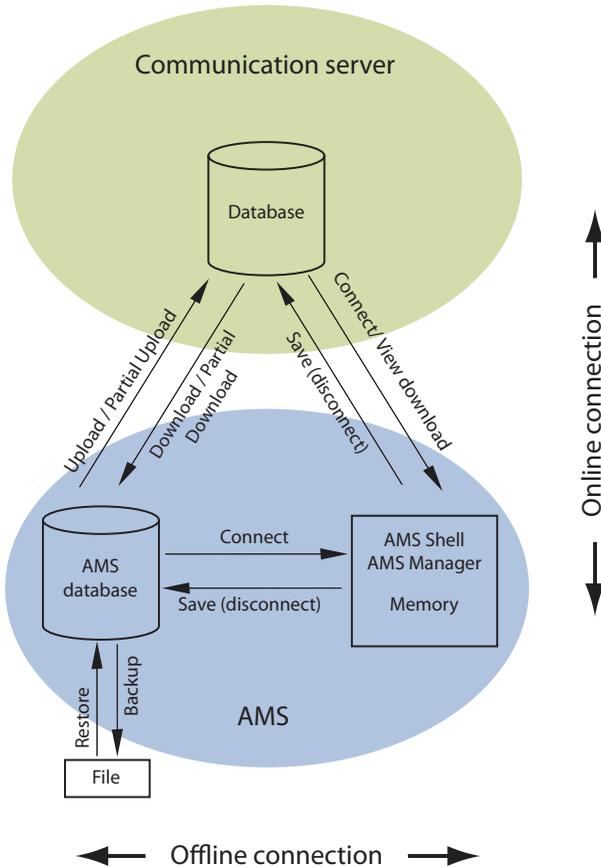
**Tab. 82 Menu example of repeated remote access on the Office 45**

F12:		REMOTE MAINT.	ON
OK	BACK		? v

## 5.5 Data exchange between communication server and PC

The system and user data is stored in the file system of the communication server and on the PC's hard disk. Both databases are serviced by the AMS Managers. To keep the databases at the same level, you need to exchange data between the databases.

The figure below illustrates the interplay between the PC and the two databases:



**Fig. 72 Functions involved in exchange data between the communication server and AMS**

To edit or complement system and user data, load the data either directly from the communication server file system or from the PC's hard disk (AMS database) into the main memory.

### 5.5.1 Working offline (AMS database)

With the AMS database you can only work in offline mode. The following functions are available:

#### **Connect (offline)**

All the configuration data from the selected communication server is loaded from the AMS database into the PC's main memory and made available for processing. When you modify the parameters in an AMS Manager, a check mark is placed alongside the corresponding location on the menu tree.



**Note:**

The changes and the check marks are retained even if a Manager is closed without saving.

#### **Disconnect (offline)**

The AMS database is closed. If configuration data was modified, AMS will ask whether you want to save the changes in the AMS database.

#### **Save**

After editing, the modified configuration data is written from the PC's main memory into the AMS database and the check marks on the modified parameters are deleted. Saving always stores the configuration data from all the AMS Managers.

#### **Backup (AMS -> File)**

This menu function on the AMS Shell stores configuration data of the selected communication server from the AMS database to a backup file specified by the user. If the current communication server configuration data is to be saved, it must first be loaded into the AMS database using Download (communication server -> AMS).

#### **Backup AMS database**

This menu function on the AMS Shell stores the configuration data of all the communication servers from the AMS database to a backup file specified by the user.



**Note:**

Make sure the configuration data from the AMS database is up to date.

### **Restore (File -> AMS)**

This menu function on the AMS Shell restores configuration data from a backup file to the AMS database of the selected communication server. The configuration data can then be transferred to the communication server file system using the Upload function.

### **Restore AMS database**

This menu function on the AMS Shell restores configuration data from a backup file to the AMS database of all the open communication servers.



**Note:**

All the configuration data in the current AMS database will be overwritten!

## **5. 5. 2 Working online (communication server database)**

Configuration data in the communication server database can only be accessed in the online mode. The following functions are available:

### **Connect (Online)**

The communication server is connected with the AMS Shell and automatically loads the configuration data of the communication server into the PC's main memory.

### **Disconnect (Online)**

Closes all the AMS Managers and disconnects the online connection between the PC and the communication server. If configuration data has been changed, but not yet stored in the communication server with *Save*, AMS displays a prompt asking whether the configuration should be saved. AMS will then ask you whether you want to update the local AMS database.

### **Save**

The modified configuration data is stored in the communication server file system and the check marks alongside the modified parameters are cleared. Saving always stores the data from all the AMS Managers.

### **Download (communication server -> AMS)**

During the download via the AMS Shell the configuration data is downloaded from the file system of the communication server to the AMS database.

During the download the system is automatically prebarred and then released once the operation is completed. Existing connections are retained. The progress of the download operation is indicated by a progress indicator bar in a window. A download can be carried out when the system is operating under full-load conditions.

### **Download view**

This function loads configuration data from the current window in a AMS Manager from the file system of the communication server to the PC's main memory. This partial download is available in the online mode of individual Managers (e.g. Configuration Manager, Fault & Maintenance Manager). New or modified hardware can be registered in AMS in this way.

### **Upload (AMS -> communication server)**

During the upload via the AMS Shell configuration data from the AMS database is written to the file system of the communication server.

During a configuration data upload the system is automatically prebarred and then again released once the operation is completed. The progress of the upload operation is indicated by a progress indicator bar in a window.

The status of CFUs, user group members, switch groups, control outputs, personal call routing and free seating sessions can also be uploaded if required.

An upload is carried out in the following cases:

- Putting a new system into operation.
- Restoring a system if the configuration has been lost.
- Replicating a special configuration, e.g. copying customer data to a different system.



#### **Note:**

Some configuration changes only take effect after a restart. Once the upload is completed, the communication server is restarted.

### **Partial Upload**

The Partial Upload function is used to load the following configuration data individually from the AMS database to the communication server file system.

- Abbreviated dialling numbers
- PISN user data
- Terminal data (individual or block by block)
- LCR (Least Cost Routing) data

With a partial upload, configuration data that changes frequently can be uploaded more quickly into the communication server file system.



#### **Note:**

A partial upload is only followed by a restart and disconnection of existing phone connections if system data is loaded up onto a communication server. In this case AMS generates an appropriate message.

### **Auto backup**

The Auto Backup function creates a backup of the configuration data at regular intervals and saves the backup files on the communication server's file management system. The distribution service is used to automatically copy the backups to an FTP server or to send them by e-mail. All the settings for the Auto Backup function can be found under *Auto backup* in the Configuration Manager. The backup files on the communication system's file management system can be downloaded or deleted from the AMS Shell. It is also possible to upload a backup file to the communication server's file management system.



#### **See also:**

The relevant procedure is described in detail in the *AMS Help*.

### **Managing audio data**

This menu is used to administer the audio data for the voice mail system, the announcement service and the "Music on hold" feature. You have the following possibilities:

- Download all audio data or only the personal voice messages and greetings for saving in a backup
- Upload all audio data or only the personal voice messages and greetings from a backup.

- Upload audio guide languages, global greetings, welcome announcements for the announcement service or files for Music on hold from a backup or other sources
- Download, compress and upload existing voice messages and greetings The Aastra WAV Converter is used for compressing and converts the wave files from audio format G.711 to audio format G.729. The compressed format is needed if the voice mail system is operated in expanded mode.
- Download of all audio data and temporary deleting of the audio data on the communication server file system This function is useful when there is insufficient free storage space available in the file system to upload the system software.

**See also:**

The relevant procedure is described in detail in the AMS Help.

### 5.5.3 Import / Export Configuration data

#### Importing and exporting data tables

The Import / Export function allows the user to import data tables (abbreviated dialling numbers, DDI numbers and names, user numbers and user names, terminal data) into the AMS database or to export such tables from the database. The exported tables are stored in Excel format and can then be sorted or modified.

#### Importing data from an Aastra 415 into an Aastra 430

AMS configuration data from an Aastra 415 communication server can be read into the database of an open Aastra 430 communication server. The AMS Shell provides the following function for this purpose: *Tools / Import / Import data from Aastra 415...*

#### Importing data from older communication servers

System data from an Aastra IntelliGate system can be imported into the AMS database using a backup file. The AMS Shell provides an import function for this purpose. The following combinations of source and destination communication servers are possible:

**Tab. 83 Import combinations**

Source communication server	Destination communication server
IntelliGate 150	Aastra 415
IntelliGate 300	Aastra 430
IntelliGate 2025	Aastra 415, Aastra 430, Aastra 470
IntelliGate 2045	Aastra 430, Aastra 470
IntelliGate 2065	Aastra 470

To import data from an IntelliGate communication server, proceed as follows:

1. Create a backup of the IntelliGate communication server using the latest version of AIMS 7.9 (AIMS-Shell: *Tools / Backup (PC -> Disk)*).
2. Create a new Aastra 400 communication server in AMS (offline).
3. Configure all the cards on your new communication server in AMS (offline).
4. Import the backup file of the IntelliGate communication server (AMS Shell: *Tools / Import / Import data from Aastra IntelliGate...*).

## 5.6 Configuring

The configuration steps are based on the information determined during the planning and, where applicable, the installation.



### See also:

The procedure for setting up and clearing down an online connection from AMS to the communication server and the steps for configuring a single system, a private network (PISN) or an Aastra Intelligent Net (AIN) are described in detail in the AMS help.

The sections below contain information that may be useful before, during or after a configuration.

### First start of the communication server

If an existing communication server is to be upgraded, it must first be in a defined state. This involves setting or deleting all the parameter values to their country-specific default values and carrying out a self-test.

This initialization can be achieved in the following ways:

- With the pilot key on the front panel  
See "[Carrying out a first start](#)", page 196
- With AMS  
In the AMS Configuration Manager or Fault & Maintenance Manager a *First start* can be carried out under *Online / Reset communication server*. If the sales channel is also to be modified, create a new communication server in the AMS Shell and select a sales channel. Next *Set/change the sales channel* under *Tools*. This executes a first start and the country-specific default values are loaded.

**Note:**

To perform a first-start or a sales channel change, either a user account with the corresponding authorization profile is necessary (see "[User accounts and authorization profiles](#)", page 149) or the local, password-free access must be open (see "[Password-free access](#)", page 154).

## Preparing Configuration with AMS Offline

The complete configuration of a communication system can be created on the PC without access to the communication server and stored in the database. The prepared configuration can then be uploaded to the communication server file system (see "[Upload \(AMS -> communication server\)](#)", page 161).

## Configuration with AMS (online)

If a communication system that has already been configured is present, the configuration can be loaded from the configuration server in AMS and edited online (see "[Connect \(Online\)](#)", page 160).

If the system to be configured is in the first-start state, the country-specific default values are loaded.

**See also:**

Part of the configuration settings is also accessible via the System Assistant function on the Office 45. A separate set of User's Guide is available for this.

## Activating the licences

The licence information is stored on the EIM (Equipment Identification Module) card.

The licence information includes:

- The EID (Equipment Identification) serial number of the EIM card
- The sales channel identification CID (Channel Identification)
- Licence code LIC
- System type

Each communication server is supplied with a licence certificate containing the above information (without licence code). Please keep the certificate in a safe place.

**Tab. 84** Example of licence information

Licensing	
Equipment Identification (EID):	81154445474349760E5844D276000035A317
Channel Identification (CID):	0
Licence code (LIC):	0408040158F396792739
System type:	Aastra 430

The licences must be activated. The licence code can be edited both online and offline with AMS:

1. The licence has to be activated with the aid of the EID via the Aastra 400 activation portal on the extranet (partner login required). The licence code issued as a result contains the appropriate *Software Release* licence (and any other licences you may have acquired).
2. Enter the licence code under CM\_1.2\_ *Licence code* in AMS and save it in the communication server. The licence code is stored on the EIM card.
3. The newly licensed features are enabled. It is not necessary to restart the communication server (exception: AIN licences).

All the features (even those subject to charges) can be configured offline without a valid licence. During the configuration or during the configuration data upload the user is warned that the communication server does not yet have the required licence.

Each licence code can only be used for one communication server. If a communication system consists of several communication servers (e. g. in a AIN), normally only one licence code is required on the Master.

To licence several communication servers, you will obtain separate licence codes to match the licence information of the individual communication server.

The licence information can be viewed directly from the communication server using the Configuration Manager in AMS.

The data stored on the EIM card is not deleted by a first start of the PBX, and remains available.



**See also:**

"Licences", page 54

## Reading out default values

There is a simple method for reading out the country-specific default values:

1. In offline mode on the AMS Shell create a new communication server for the required sales channel.
2. Log in with the default access data
3. Open Configuration Manager
4. Add the desired hardware in the *System configuration*.
5. Add system terminals, mailboxes, direct dialling numbers etc.
6. Most default values can now be read out.

## 6 Operation and Maintenance

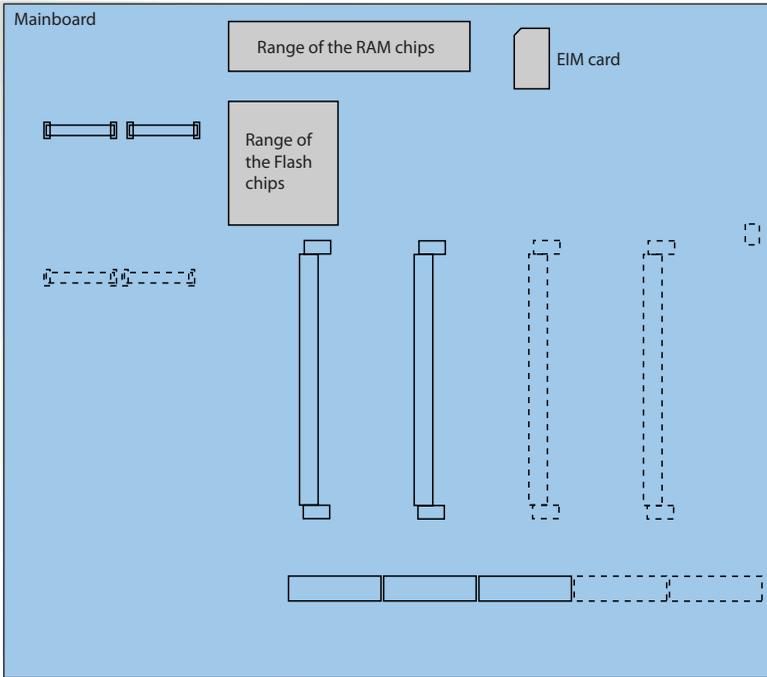
**This chapter describes maintaining the system and configuration data as well as updating the system software. Replacing cards, modules and terminals are also described. The display and control panel of the communication server as well as operations supervision using the event message concept, the operating state display, and the error display are also topics covered in this chapter.**

### 6.1 Data Maintenance

#### 6.1.1 What data is stored where

The communication server's data storage system consists of different elements:

- In the Flash components are stored the system software, the boot software and the configuration data. The contents of the memory are retained even when there is no power supply.
- In the RAM components (main memory) are stored volatile data that cannot be saved. It is available only when the system is in operation.
- The EIM card (Equipment Identification Module) contains the system-specific data (system ID, system type, sales channel, licence code, generation, DECT identification numbers), IP address of the Ethernet interface on the configuration server). The contents of the memory are retained even when there is no power supply.



**Fig. 73** Memories on the mainboard Aastra 415/430

### 6. 1. 1. 1 System software

The communication server's entire system software package is stored in compressed form in the Flash memory.

The RAM components comprise the main memory for program data. When the PBX starts up, the communication server software on the serial Flash memory is decompressed, loaded into the main memory and started.

### 6. 1. 1. 2 File system of the communications server

The file system of the communication server comprises the system software, the software for system phones, the system and terminal configuration data, the audio data (voice mail, announcement service, music on hold, audio guide), system logs, data for WebAdmin, etc. The data is stored in the Flash memory.

The AMS Shell provides functions for uploading and downloading the configuration data and the audio data (see "[Data exchange between communication server and PC](#)", page 158).

The file system can also be accessed with an FTP client. This is useful for instance for the software upload for Aastra SIP terminals.



**Note:**

Modifying or deleting files on the file system of the communication server can result in a system that is no longer able to run.



**See also:**

The WebAdmin configuration tool also provides upload and download functions as well as access to the file system of the communication server.

### 6. 1. 1. 3 Boot software

The boot software is stored in a different Flash memory, which allows the communication server to start up in the boot mode, even if without executable system software.

### 6. 1. 1. 4 System-specific data

The system-specific data (system ID, system type, sales channel, licence code, generation, DECT identification numbers, IP address of the Ethernet interface on the communication server) is stored on the EIM card (chip card). This data is not deleted by a first start of the PBX, and remains available. It can be ported to a different communication server by replacing the EIM card.

## 6.1.2 Updating configuration data

There are system-wide, user-related and terminal-related configuration data:

- System-wide configuration data can only be modified using AMS or WebAdmin.
- Terminal configuration data such as key assignments or ringing melodies can be modified either directly on the terminal, with AMS or with WebAdmin. With some system phones configuration is also possible using the web user interface or with the help of configuration files.
- User-related configuration data such as private contacts or CFUs is valid for all the terminals assigned to the user and can be configured using AMS or WebAdmin, in some cases directly on the terminal itself.

Access to the configuration data via AMS or WebAdmin is regulated by a User Access Control with user accounts, authorization profiles and authorization levels. More information can be found in the Chapter "[Configuration](#)", page 144.

## 6.2 Update Software

### 6.2.1 System software

The communication server software is loaded using the AMS Upload Manager, WebAdmin or in the case of newly delivered systems also with the "Smart Software Update" auxiliary application.

The system software also comprises the software for the digital system phones, the IP system phones, the Aastra DECT radio units, the Aastra DECT cordless phones and the Aastra SIP phones.

There are several possibilities for establishing a communication link between the communication server and the AMS Upload Manager (see "[Access types](#)", page 148).



#### Tip

The software version of the communication server can be displayed as follows on digital and IP system phones with display:

1. Access the configuration menu
2. Long-click on the \* key

Depending on the phone, additional information is displayed.

### 6. 2. 1. 1    AMSUpload Manager

The Upload Manager called up via the AMS Shell is a convenient and reliable way of loading a new system software on to the communication server file system. The activation point of the new software is selectable. After the new software has been uploaded, the old software can be loaded and activated at any time during a user-definable monitoring time.

The Upload Manager supports what is known as an "Emergency Upload via LAN". This emergency upload is useful in exceptional cases where there is no longer any executable software left on the system.



**See also:**

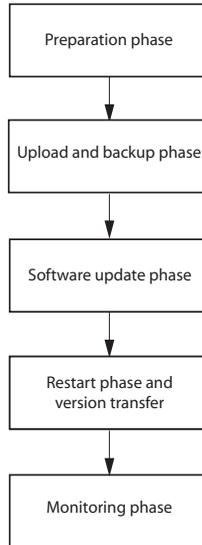
For a more detailed description of the functions and parameters and the procedure in a Aastra Intelligent Net (AIN) please call up the Upload Manager's online help.

### 6. 2. 1. 2    Standard upload

New system software is uploaded in different phases. The Upload Manager monitors the system software copying process from the PC to the communication server. The version transfer is monitored by the new system software.

**Sequence phases for the standard upload:**

- Preparation phase:  
The Upload Manager prepares the communication server for the transmission of the new system software.
- Upload and backup phase:  
The new system software is transferred to the communication server's file system in compressed form and stored there. The previous system software remains stored as a backup.
- Software update phase:  
The current system software is replaced by the freshly loaded system software.
- Restart phase and version transfer:  
The communication server is restarted automatically. The boot software starts the new system software and runs a version transfer at the same time.
- Monitoring phase:  
During the monitoring phase, the new system software is active, but the old remains. In this phase, the old system software can be reactivated at any time with a *Rollback*. When the monitoring phase is finished, the old application is deleted.



**Fig. 74** Software upload sequence

During a standard upload the communication server remains operational during the upload phase. After successful software upload, the communication server runs an automatic restart at the set time and restarts with the newly loaded system software.

If there is insufficient storage space left in the Flash memory to update the system software, the wave files (voice mail, announcement service and music on hold) can be stored on the PC and deleted from the Flash memory. When the monitoring phase is finished, the wave files can be reloaded to the communication server file system (see ["File system of the communications server"](#), page 170).

If for whatever reasons the software upload is not possible or if a fault occurs during the upload, the previous system software with the previous associated configuration data remains activated.

If errors are detected in the system software during the time in which the newly loaded system software is being monitored for fault-free operation, the previous system software is reactivated.

Successful and failed software uploads are stored as event messages and sent to the configured signal destinations.



**See also:**

For information on event messages and signal destinations, see ["Event message concept"](#), page 201.

### Initiating an upload process

To ensure a successful software upload, carry out the following preparatory steps:

1. Recommendation: Use AMS to save the configuration data (*Tools / Backup*).
2. Save the wave files (voice mail, announcement service and Music on hold) (*Tools / Managing audio data / Download audio data*).
3. Call up the AMS Upload Manager.
4. Select the *Configuration* tab.
5. Enter user name and password (changed) of a user account.  
Note: To perform the upload, the user account must be assigned an authorization profile for which the *FTP* interface access is enabled (see "*User Access Control*", page 149).
6. Select the system type.
7. Select a software package (zip file). If necessary, load a new software package beforehand using the *Add* button.
8. If a new licence code is required to operate the new system software, enter it under *Licence code*.  
Note: The licence code is not required for the actual upload. However, if the licence code is not entered within 4 hours of commissioning the system software, the communication server switches to a restricted operating mode that only provides basic functions.
9. Select access type.
10. Use the *Settings* button to set the connection parameters.
11. Select the *Upload* tab.
12. Set the time at which you want the newly loaded system software to be activated.
13. Set the period of time during which you want the newly loaded system software to be monitored for fault-free operation.
14. Click the *Upload* button.  
→ The upload process is now initiated.

## Bar indicator

During the software upload a dialog box with a horizontal bar indicates the time progress of the upload process.

If you need to stop the upload at any stage, click the *Cancel* button. The software upload is then stopped and the current system software remains in operation.

## Status display

The status display provides information with date and time indications on the current software upload, including all the event messages output in connection with the current software upload.

## Upload log

Once an upload process is completed or if it is terminated prematurely, the settings of the software upload including the data automatically entered in the log directory are printed out on the system printer.



### See also:

Further information about uploading is available in *Help of the Upload Manager*.

## 6. 2. 1. 3 Emergency Upload of the system software

An Emergency Upload has to be activated whenever a standard software upload is not possible, has proved faulty or to replace a Flash card. To ensure a successful Emergency Upload, proceed as follows:

The Emergency Upload is carried out via the LAN interface using the Upload Manager:

1. Set the system to boot mode using the pilot key (see "[Boot Mode](#)", page 198).
2. Call up the AMS Upload Manager.
3. Enter user name and password (changed) of a user account.



### Note:

To perform the upload, the user account must be assigned an authorization profile for which the *FTP* interface access is enabled (see "[User Access Control](#)", page 149).

4. Select configuration server.

5. Select a software package (zip file). If necessary, load a new software package beforehand using the *Add* button.
6. Select *EUL via LAN* and use the *Settings* button to enter the IP address.
7. Click the *Upload* button.  
→ The Emergency Upload is started.

### 6. 2. 2 Software of corded system phones

The communication server's software package contains the software for the system phones, which is therefore updated in each case along with the system software.

The Office 10, Office 25 and Aastra 5360 system phones do not have their own memory. The system phones Office 35, Office 45, Aastra 5370, Aastra 5380, all the IP phones of the Aastra 5300ip series and all the SIP phones of the Aastra 6753i series have a Flash memory.

#### System phones with flash memory

The flash memory contains the boot software and the application software. DSI terminals also have an area with the interface software.

The actual software for the radio unit is contained in the communication server's software. Office 35). When you start up the terminal, the software versions of the terminals are compared with that of the communication server. If the versions differ, the software is downloaded from the communication server to the terminal. When updating the system software this can take several minutes for each DSI terminal.

The expansion key modules Aastra M530 and Aastra M535 also have a flash chip containing software. The update mechanism is the same as the one described above. However a local power supply is always required (Power over Ethernet is also possible with IP terminals).

### 6. 2. 3 Software system Aastra DECT

#### DECT radio units SB-4+, SB-8 and SB-8ANT

The Flash memory on the radio units contains an area that cannot be modified. It is used for starting the radio unit and receiving the software for the radio unit.

The actual software for the radio unit is contained in the communication server's system software. The loaded software is tested when the radio unit starts up. If the

loaded software is not identical to the version in the system software, the software will be downloaded from the communication server on to the radio unit and stored in the Flash memory of the radio unit.

### **DECT cordless phones of the family Aastra 600d**

The software for the Aastra 610d, Aastra 620d and Aastra 630d cordless phones, is updated via radio (Air-Download) The update can be enabled or disabled individually for each cordless phone using the menu *System - Download server* on the cordless phones. If the cordless phone is logged on to several systems, this menu defines which system the software update is relevant to.

There is only one software for the cordless phones of the Aastra 600d series. It is included in the communication server's software package and stored in the file system of the communication server. If the phone software is to be updated independently of the communication server software, it can be updated using FTP (File Transfer Protocol). The communication server's file system can be accessed with an FTP Client (e. g. Filezilla) or with the Windows Explorer. The section below describes access with the Windows Explorer:

1. Start the Windows Explorer.
2. In the address bar enter the communication server's IP address (ftp ://<IP address>).  
Note: If the address bar is not visible, it can be unhidden under *View - Icon bars - Address bar*.
3. In the login window enter the communication server's user name and password. You are now in the communication server's file system.
4. Switch the "sw\handset" subdirectory and replace the "mddf.ini" file.
5. Switch the "sw\handset\aastra600d" subdirectory and replace the files "pp.hdf" and "firmware.cnt".
6. All the cordless phones that selected this system for the download and have not disabled the download will now automatically start the software update.

### **DECT cordless phones Office 135 and Office 160**

The software for the Office 135 and Office 160 cordless phones, is updated via radio (Air-Download). This requires the cordless phone to be logged on to system A.

The memory in the cordless phones is a Flash memory. The Flash memory contains an area that cannot be modified. This area contains the cordless phone's boot software.

The software for the cordless phones is contained in the communication server software package. The loaded software is tested when the cordless phone starts up. If the loaded software is not identical to the version in the system software, the system will initiate an Air-Download. The software is loaded from the communication server onto the cordless phones via radio and stored in the Flash memory.

To be able to run an Air-Download, you need to ensure that the cordless phone contains a functional software.

The cordless phone remains fully functional during an Air-Download. The new loaded software is activated only once the Air-Download has been successfully completed. A restart is carried out on the cordless phone.

### 6.3 Hardware update

Hardware maintenance comprises replacing cards and modules when there is a defect or for a generation change. Safety regulations must be observed and the step-by-step procedure must be followed.

#### 6.3.1 Preparations

The following preliminary steps apply to interface cards, system cards and system modules as well as to the mainboard of the communication server itself.

First steps before cards are removed or added:

1. [Inform users](#)
2. [Prebar the system](#)
3. [Disconnect communication server power supply](#)

#### Inform users

Inform all concerned users if the system has to be put out of operation during working time.



#### Tip

To inform users, use the internal messaging system on the system phones.

## Prebar the system

Prebarring the system prevents setting up new connections. Ongoing calls are not cleared down. If a user tries to set up a call while prebarring is activated, he will obtain no dialling tone and the system phone display will read *Not available*

The system is prebarred in the AMS Configuration Manager or in the Fault & Maintenance Manager under *Slot configuration*: press the *Prebar system* button.

The LED display on the front panel shows when the system is prebarred (see [Tab. 95](#)).



### **Aastra Intelligent Net:**

In an AIN every node can be individually prebarred and unlocked again.

As soon as there are no more active connections in the prebarred system, the system can be taken out of operation.



### **Note:**

Prebarring the system can be dispensed with if all concerned are aware that existing connections will be disconnected.

## Disconnect communication server power supply

Disconnect the communication server from the power supply.

### 6.3.2 Licenses and EIM card

The license information and IP address of the communication server's Ethernet interface are stored on the EIM card.

#### 6.3.2.1 Licences

To expand a system already in operation or to re-order a licence for a new system (see "[Licences](#)", [page 54](#)), proceed as follows:

1. Order the licences you require from your authorized dealer, specifying the EID number, which is used to identify the communication server.
2. The new licence code can be obtained either from your authorized dealer or via the Aastra 400 activation portal on the extranet using the EID (partner login required).

3. Enter the licence code under CM\_1.2\_ [Licence code](#) in AMS and save it in the communication server.
4. The newly licensed features are enabled. It is not necessary to restart the communication server (exception: AIN licences).

### 6.3.2.2 EIM card

The EIM card must be replaced in the following cases:

- A licence is transferred to another communication server
- The mainboard is defective
- The EIM card is defective

#### **A licence is transferred to another system of the same type**

A licence can only be transferred to a communication server of the same type. To do so you need to replace the EIM card with the licence information.

#### **The mainboard is defective**

If you need to replace a defective mainboard, transfer the EIM card from the defective mainboard onto the new one. For instructions on how to replace the mainboard, see "[To replace the communication server, proceed as follows:](#)"; [page 185](#).

#### **The EIM card is defective**

In the unlikely event of a defective EIM card, contact your authorized dealer to discuss the procedure.

For the procedure for switching an EIM card see "[Replacing the EIM card](#)", [page 184](#).

### 6.3.3 Interface cards

The different card types, the number of slots and the maximum configuration are all determined by the system capacity (see "[3 Expansion Stages and System Capacity](#)").

A number of rules have to be observed when fitting the cards (see "[Component mounting rules](#)", [page 90](#)).

All configuration data is centrally stored in non-volatile Flash memory. This means that configuration data is preserved whenever a defective interface card has to be replaced by a new one.

### 6.3.3.1 Replacing a defective interface card

A card is replaced by the same card type with the same number of ports.

Procedure:



**Warning**

Be sure to observe the "Safety regulations", page 72.

1. Carry out preparations (see "Preparations", page 178).
2. Remove the housing cover.
3. Remove the defective interface card by pressing the two lateral metal clamps outward at the same time and gently lifting the interface card.
4. Place the new interface card at a slight angle into the required slot (see Fig. 24). Make sure the angled side of the interface card is facing backwards (i.e. it must not project over the wiring adapter slots).
5. Carefully press the interface card downwards until the two lateral metal clamps engage.
6. Fit the housing cover.
7. Reconnect the system to the power supply.

### 6.3.3.2 New card with fewer ports

A card is replaced by a similar card with fewer ports.

Procedure:

Change the card and put the system into operation again. Similar procedure as described in "Replacing a defective interface card", page 181.

The following data is deleted:

- The system and terminal configuration data of the terminals on the interfaces that are no longer present in the new configuration.
- The system configuration data of the network interfaces that are no longer present in the new configuration.

**Tab. 85 Example: Reducing the number of terminal or network interfaces**

TIC-4TS → TIC-2TS	The configuration data of terminal interfaces 3 and 4 are deleted.
TIC-4AB → TIC-2AB	The configuration data of network interfaces 3 and 4 are deleted.

**Note:**

If the terminal configuration data of system terminals is deleted following the reconfiguration of a card, a warning message will appear beforehand to give you the possibility of cancelling the process. However, this is possible only if the configuration data of the original card was not already deleted beforehand.

### 6.3.3.3 New card with more ports

A card is replaced by a similar card with more ports.

Procedure:

1. Change the card and put the system into operation again. Similar procedure as described in ["Replacing a defective interface card"](#), page 181.
2. Select *Confirm system configuration* in the AMS Configuration Manager.
3. Configure new ports.

The system configuration data (User No., User configuration, etc.) of the terminals on the new ports is created as new data (default values).

**Tab. 86 Example: Expanding the number of terminal or network interfaces**

TIC-2TS → TIC-4TS	The configuration data of terminal interfaces 3 and 4 are created as new.
TIC-2AB → TIC-4AB	The configuration data of terminal interfaces 3 and 4 are created as new.

### 6.3.3.4 Change slot

Interface cards can be moved to a different slot. The terminal configuration data of the system phones can be transferred.

Procedure:

1. Change the slot and put the system into operation again. Similar procedure as described in ["Replacing a defective interface card"](#), page 181.

**Note:**

The wiring adapter must also be changed to the corresponding slot. Any incorrectly fitted or missing wiring adapters are signalled by a red flashing LED on the display after start-up (see ["Wiring Adapter Malfunction Mode"](#), page 197).

2. Connect the system terminals to the ports of the new slot.

3. Re-configure port allocation using the AMS Configuration Manager.
4. Insert the card in the new slot in AMS and remove it from the old slot. The configuration data at the old slot location is now deleted.



**Note:**

Not all cards can be equipped on all slots (see "Component mounting rules", page 90).

### 6.3.4 System modules

The category system modules comprises the DSP modules stacked in slot SM1. DSP modules are available in various versions (SM-DSPX1, SM-DSPX2, SM-DSP1, SM-DSP2). Compared with DSP modules, modules with the designation DSPX are fitted with more powerful DSP chips.

#### 6.3.4.1 Change the DSP module

The following describes how to replace a DSP module if it is defective or how to replace it for a more powerful module.

To change a DSP module, proceed as follows:



**Warning**

Be sure to observe the "Safety regulations", page 72.

1. Carry out preparations (see "Preparations", page 178).
2. Remove the housing cover.
3. Remove the old or defective module by loosening the fastening screw and carefully pulling the module out vertically of the module slot.



**Note:**

If there are several modules fitted and the card to be replaced is not topmost, the spacing sleeves have to be loosened and the modules pulled. The order of the modules on the slot is relevant only if different types of modules are equipped.

4. Press the new module downward evenly on both connectors to the stop.
5. Secure the module with the fastening screw.
6. Fit the housing cover.
7. Reconnect the system to the power supply.

### 6.3.5 System cards

As the RAM and Flash chips are fitted directly to the mainboard, the category system cards comprises only the EIM card.

#### 6.3.5.1 Replacing the EIM card

The EIM card is located in a chip-card holder that is secured directly on the mainboard. The position of the chip-card holder on the mainboard is shown in [Fig. 73](#).

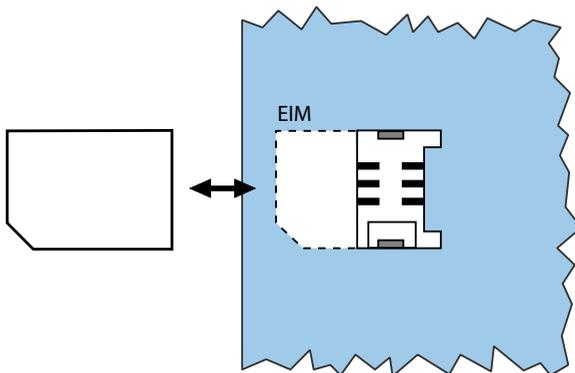
To fit an EIM card, proceed as follows:



**Warning**

Be sure to observe the "Safety regulations", page 72.

1. Carry out preparations (see "[Preparations](#)", page 178).
2. Remove the housing cover.
3. Gently push the EIM card along the guide tongues out of the chip-card holder.
4. Push the new EIM card under the guide tongues and through to the stop in the chip-card holder. Make sure the contacts of the EIM card are facing downwards and the bevelled edge of the EIM card is pointing towards the edge of the Mainboard (see [Fig. 75](#)).
5. Fit the housing cover.
6. Reconnect the communication server to the power supply.



**Fig. 75** EIM card

**Notes:**

- The EIM card must be fitted before the system is put into operation. The communication server will not start without the EIM card.
- If the defective EIM card was replaced by a new one, all DECT cordless phones must be logged on again. This is necessary because the DECT identification numbers are stored on the EIM card.

### 6.3.6 Mainboard

If the components on the mainboard are defective or permanently faulty, the entire communication server with the metal chassis must be replaced.

To replace the communication server, proceed as follows:

**Warning**

Be sure to observe the "Safety regulations", page 72.

1. Backup the configuration data using AMS if still possible.
2. Carry out preparations (see "Preparations", page 178).
3. Remove the housing cover.
4. Remove the interface cards (see "Interface cards", page 180), the system modules (see "System modules", page 183) and the wiring adapter.
5. Change the EIM card of the defective mainboard to the new mainboard (see "Replacing the EIM card", page 184).
6. Dismantle all the connected cables in such a way that the new communication server can be identically reconnected.  
Note: The mainboard is not dismantled but replaced complete with metal housing.
7. The new communication server can now be reassembled, fitted and installed in the reverse sequence.
8. Carry out a first start of the system (see "First start of the communication server", page 164) and upload the configuration data back on to the communication server using AMS.

## 6.3.7 Replacing system terminals

### 6.3.7.1 Corded system phones

#### Phones with the same level of added features

##### Replacing a defective phone

Once the defective system phone has been replaced by an identical phone the terminal configuration data is automatically transferred.

##### Relocating a phone

The terminal configuration data of a system phone can be copied to another phone with the same level of added features using the AMS Configuration (*Edit / Copy* and *Edit / Paste*). You can choose the parameters to copy from a list. The data can also be saved with AMS and then reloaded if the system phone is logged on to a different card.

#### Phones with a different level of added features

Given that every level of added features on system phones has a certain number of features, the features are adapted (reduced or increased) to the new phone. The features are reduced if a phone is replaced by a phone with a lower level of added features (e. g. Aastra 5380 → Aastra 5370) or by a predecessor model (e. g. Aastra 5380 → Office 45).

If a system phone is replaced by a system phone of a different level of added features, the phone display will display the message *Wrong phone type*. On the Office 10 the LED flashes slowly. In this situation, although the phone can be used for basic telephone operations, none of the added features will be available.

Before the added features of the new system phone can be used, the new terminal type will have to be entered in the system using the AMS Configuration Manager *Terminal data* or by configuring at the terminal.

## 6.3.7.2 DECT terminals

### Replacing a radio unit

1. Dismantle the defective radio unit.
2. Fit the new radio unit.

**Note:**

If the ports of a radio unit are to be changed or if a radio unit is no longer used, it is important to remove the radio unit in the system configuration. If not, start-up problems may occur when another radio unit is connected to the same ports.

### Replacing a cordless phone

1. Log off the previous DECT user via AMS.
2. Log on the new cordless phone. The cordless phone data is preserved until the user number is also deleted.

### Logging a cordless phone off the system

Click in the system configuration under *Terminal data*, *DECT settings* tab, on the button *Logout cordless phone*.

**Tip:**

The identification of the cordless phone is deleted only if the cordless phone is located within the coverage range of a radio unit; otherwise, it must be deleted manually on the cordless phone (see the cordless phone's User's Guide). The user number and data in the system are retained.

### Logging a cordless phone onto the system

1. Prepare the cordless phone for login (see the cordless phone's User's Guide).
2. Prepare system for logon. To do so, click the *Log on cordless phone* button on the *DECT settings* tab under *Terminal data* in the AMS system configuration.

**Note:**

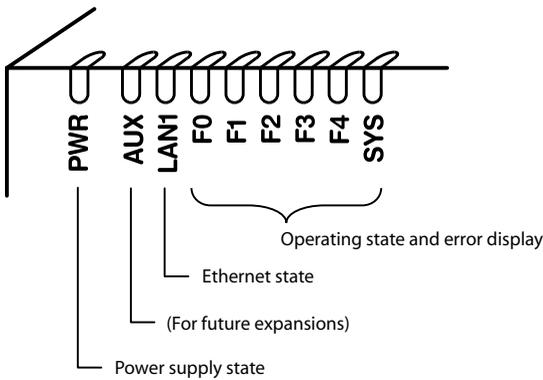
The user of the cordless phone may have to identify himself to the system using an access code. The access code has to be entered in the system configuration prior to the logon procedure.

## 6.4 Display and control panel

The display and control panel of the Aastra 415 and Aastra 430 communication servers on the front panel consists of an LED display panel and a pilot key. It is used to indicate operating states and carry out functions.

### 6.4.1 LED display

The front panel features an LED display with a total of 9 labelled LED. It is used to as an operating state and error indicator during the start-up phase and during operation.



"PWR" lits: Power supply in order

"LAN1" lit: Port has a connection with the network

"LAN1" Flashing Port is receiving or sending data

"F0, F1, F2, F3, F4, SYS": see "[Operating modes and display priorities](#)", page 191

**Fig. 76 LED display**

Each LED can take on one of four states: green (G), orange (O), red (R) and inactive. In general the colours have the following meaning:

**Tab. 87 Significance of the LEDs colours**

Colour		Meaning
Inactive	-	Switched off
Green	G	Normal operation / everything in order
Orange	O	Function is being carried out / is active
Red	R	Warning / error

An LED activation period lasts 1 second and is subdivided into 8 units of 125 ms. In this way all the various flashing patterns can be displayed.

Example:

In the following display pattern the LED lights up green for 500 ms and is then inactive for 500 ms. Then it lights up green again for 500 ms ... etc.

**Tab. 88 Example of a display pattern**

LED activation period								Description
← 1s →								
G	G	G	G	-	-	-	-	Slowly flashing green

The following display patterns and symbols have been defined for displaying the status of the communication server:

**Tab. 89 Defined display patterns**

LED activation period								Description	Symbol
← 1s →									
-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	Inactive	-
G	G	G	G	G	G	G	G	Steady green	G
O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	Steady orange	O
R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	Steady red	R
G	G	G	G	-	-	-	-	Slowly flashing green	G -
O	O	O	O	-	-	-	-	Slowly flashing orange	O -
R	R	R	R	-	-	-	-	Slowly flashing red	R -
G	G	G	G	O	O	O	O	Slowly flashing green/orange	G O
O	O	O	O	R	R	R	R	Slowly flashing orange/red	O R
R	R	R	R	G	G	G	G	Slowly flashing red/green	R G
G	G	-	-	G	G	-	-	Rapidly flashing green	G - G
G	-	G	-	G	-	G	-	Very rapidly flashing green	G - G
R	-	R	-	R	-	R	-	Very rapidly flashing red	R - R

## 6. 4. 2 Pilot key (CTRL key)

Pressing the pilot key carries out certain functions or switches the system to a particular mode.

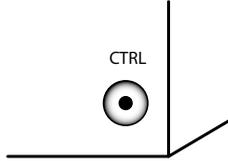


Fig. 77 Pilot key

Different actions are carried out depending on how long the key is pressed and the system's current operating state. The duration of the keypress is divided into three time intervals:

Tab. 90 Keypress duration, pilot key

Designation	ID	Keypress duration
Short keypress (Shortclick)	SC	0..0.2 seconds
Long keypress (Long Click)	LC	2...10 seconds
Very long keypress (Very Long Click)	VLC	More than 10 seconds

## 6. 4. 3 Carrying out functions

The pilot key is used to carry out various functions. For certain functions the system has to be in a particular operating state beforehand.

### Restart without database backup

In all operating states a very long keypress (VLC) on the pilot key forces the communication server to restart without database backup (reset). The restart is initiated **after the key is released**.

### Restart with database backup

See "[Restart with database backup](#)", page 194.

### Tests

See "[Thorough RAM test](#)", page 192.

## Special accesses

See "Enabling / disabling password-free access", page 194 and "Enabling / disabling the dial-up connection to the AIN", page 195.

## Restoring default values

See "Carrying out a first start", page 196 and "Resetting the IP address", page 197.

## Emergency Upload via LAN

For an Emergency Upload via LAN the system must first be set to boot mode, see "Boot Mode", page 198.

### 6.4.4 Operating modes and display priorities

The system software of the Aastra 415/430 recognizes various operating modes, which are displayed with the LEDs F0, F1, F2, F3, F4 and SYS. In the following these displays are referred to as combination patterns or patterns and are numbered for easy reference.

The various operating modes have different display priorities, i.e. a mode with a higher display priority will cover up the combination pattern of a mode with a lower display priority. The combination patterns covered up are stored and continually updated in the background, which means that no patterns are lost.

The table below lists all the operating modes and their display priorities. The highest display priority is 1; the lowest, 7.

**Tab. 91 Operating modes and display priorities**

Operating mode	Display priority	Remarks
Error Mode	1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>System is no longer able to run</li> </ul>
Startup Mode	2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When power is supplied</li> <li>After a restart/first start</li> <li>Used as a progress indicator during startup</li> </ul>
Application Command Mode Boot Command Mode	3	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Used for carrying out certain functions</li> <li>This mode is exited automatically if no input is made within 20 seconds.</li> </ul>
Warning Mode	4	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>System is still capable of running but the system function may be impaired.</li> <li>Problem needs to be remedied as soon as possible.</li> </ul>
Wiring Adapter Malfunction Mode	5	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>System is running but a problem has been detected on one or more wiring adapter slots.</li> </ul>
Feature Mode	6	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>System is running normally but one function is active.</li> </ul>
Normal Mode	7	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>System is running normally.</li> </ul>

### 6.4.4.1 Startup Mode

Startup begins as soon as power is supplied or after a restart/first start, and ends when the system enters Normal Mode. The LED combination patterns 1...9 indicate the individual startup phases in chronological order and also serve as a progress indicator.

**Tab. 92 Combination patterns during startup**

Pattern No.	F0	F1	F2	F3	F4	SYS	Duration [s]	Meaning
1	R	R	R	R	R	R	~1,5	Red LED test
2	O	O	O	O	O	O	~1,5	Orange LED test
3	G	G	G	G	G	G	~1,5	Green LED test
4	G - G	-	-	-	-	-	~4	RAM self-test
5	G	G -	-	-	-	-	~4	Startup State
6	G	G	G -	-	-	-	~1	Preparing system software loading
7	G	G	G	G -	-	-	~25	Loading the system software
8	G	G	G	G	-	-	~1,5	System software successfully loaded
9	-	-	-	-	-	G - G	~25	System software starting up

The startup phase is now completed and the system switches to Normal Mode. The pilot key now accepts inputs; the terminal displays are visible shortly thereafter.

#### Thorough RAM test

To carry out a thorough RAM test during startup, press the pilot key briefly (SC) during the orange LED test (pattern 2). Pattern 10 is displayed during the thorough RAM test instead of pattern 4.

**Tab. 93 Patterns during the thorough RAM test**

Pattern No.	F0	F1	F2	F3	F4	SYS	Duration [s]	Meaning
10	G - G	-	-	-	-	-	~60	RAM self-test (thorough)

The startup continues normally after the thorough RAM test.

### 6.4.4.2 Normal Mode

Normal Mode means that the system software is running fault-free. Depending on the situation the LEDs display the following combination patterns:

**Tab. 94** Combination patterns in Normal Mode

Pattern No.	F0	F1	F2	F3	F4	SYS	Meaning
11	–	–	–	–	–	G –	System in normal operation
12	G	–	–	–	–	G –	At least one internal port seized
13	–	G	–	–	–	G –	At least one external port seized

Mutual combinations of patterns 12 and 13 are possible as are combinations with patterns 14...16.

### 6.4.4.3 Feature Mode

Feature Mode means that the system software is running fault-free, but that a special function (feature) is active. Depending on the function the LEDs display the following combination patterns:

**Tab. 95** Combination patterns in Feature Mode

Pattern No.	F0	F1	F2	F3	F4	SYS	Meaning
14	–	–	–	–	–	O –	System is prebarred
15	–	–	–	O	–	G –	Enable the password-free access for configuration via Ethernet.
16	–	–	–	–	O	G –	Remote access to AIN enabled via an external dial-up connection.

Mutual combinations of patterns 14...16 are possible as are combinations with patterns 12 and 13.



#### Astra Intelligent Net:

In an AIN the offline mode of a satellite is indicated by the green-orange flashing SYS-LED. Combinations with the patterns of the Normal Mode and Feature Mode are possible.

Exception: Pattern 14 (prebarred system) takes priority over the offline mode display.

### 6. 4. 4. 4 Application Command Mode

The Application Command Mode can be used to restart the communication server with database backup. It is also used to enable or disable password-free access (pattern 15) and remote access to the AIN via an external dial-up connection (pattern 16).

The Application Command Mode is indicated by the SYS-LED flashing green-orange.

The Application Command Mode is entered using a long keypress of the pilot key (LC) in Normal Modus. Combination pattern 17 is displayed once the Application Command Mode has been entered.

**Tab. 96 Patterns after entering the Application Command Mode**

Pattern No.	F0	F1	F2	F3	F4	SYS	Meaning
17	R	-	-	-	-	G O	Application Command Mode active

The Application Command Mode is exited automatically if no input is made within 20 seconds; the system returns to Normal Mode.

#### Restart with database backup

The following sequence carries out a database backup and saves the data on the communication server's internal file system. The communication server is then restarted automatically:

Requirement: The system has been started up and is running normally.

1. Press the pilot key with a long keypress (LC)  
→ "SYS" flashes green-orange and "F0" lights up red
2. Press the pilot key several times with a short keypress (SC) until "F2" lights up.
3. Press the pilot key with a long keypress (LC)  
→ After 2 second keypress "F2" lights up green by way of confirmation.  
→ Once the key is released, a database backup is carried out followed by a communication server restart.

#### Enabling / disabling password-free access

The following sequence changes the status of the password-free access:

Requirement: The system has been started up and is running normally.

1. Press the pilot key with a long keypress (LC)  
→ "SYS" flashes green-orange and "F0" lights up red

2. Press the pilot key with a short keypress (SC) until "F2" lights up.  
→ "F3" indicates the current status: steady red = disabled, steady orange = enabled.
3. Press the pilot key with a long keypress (LC)  
→After 2 second keypress "F3" lights up green by way of confirmation.  
→When the key is released, the status changes and the system jumps back to original Mode.  
→"F3" now indicates the new status: inactive = disabled, steady orange = enabled.



**Note:**

You are strongly advised to keep the password-free access open only for as long as necessary. For security reasons it is automatically deactivated again after a restart or at the latest after 60 minutes.

### Enabling / disabling the dial-up connection to the AIN

The following sequence changes the status of the remote access to the AIN via an external dial-up connection:

Requirement: The system has been started up and is running normally.

1. Press the pilot key with a long keypress (LC).  
→ "SYS" flashes green-orange and "F0" lights up red
2. Press the pilot key several times with a short keypress (SC) until "F4" lights up.  
→ "F4" indicates the current status: steady red = disabled, steady orange = enabled.
3. Press the pilot key with a long keypress (LC).  
→After 2 second keypress "F4" lights up green by way of confirmation.  
→When the key is released, the status changes and the system jumps back to original Mode.  
→"F4" now indicates the new status: inactive = disabled, steady orange = enabled.



**Note:**

You are strongly advised to keep the remote access to the AIN via an external dial-up connection open only for as long as necessary. There is no time limit to the access and it remains in place even after a system restart.

## 6. 4. 4. 5 Boot Command Mode

The Boot Command Mode is used to carry out a first start or set a fixed IP address.

The Boot Command Mode is indicated by the SYS-LED flashing orange-red.

The Boot Command Mode is entered using a long keypress of the pilot key (LC) during the startup state (see pattern 5, [Tab. 92](#)). Pattern 18 is displayed once the Boot Command Mode has been entered.

**Tab. 97** Patterns after entering the Boot Command Mode

Pat-tern No.	F0	F1	F2	F3	F4	SYS	Meaning
18	R	-	-	-	-	O R	Boot Command Mode active

The Boot Command Mode is exited automatically if no input is made within 20 seconds; the system returns to Startup Mode and restarts.

### Carrying out a first start

The following sequence carries out a system first start.



**Note:**

A system first start deletes all the configuration data, which is reset to its country-specific default values. Save the data beforehand with a backup. The data stored on the EIM card is not deleted by a first start of the PBX, and remains available.

Requirement: The system is in the Boot Command Mode (pattern 18).

1. Press the pilot key briefly.  
→"F1" lights up red
2. Press the pilot key with a long keypress (LC).  
→After 2 second keypress "F1" lights up green by way of confirmation.  
→The first start is initiated once the key is released.  
→The system now deletes the database. The process can last up to 30 seconds and is displayed with pattern 19. The startup then continues normally.

**Tab. 98** Patterns while the database is deleted as a result of a first start

Pattern No.	F0	F1	F2	F3	F4	SYS	Dura-tion [s]	Meaning
19	G -	G -	G -	-	-	-	~30	Deleting the database



**See also:**

"Carrying out functions", page 190

## Resetting the IP address

The IP address data is stored on the EIM card and is retained even after a first start. The following sequence only resets the IP address data of the communication server to the default values. All the other data is retained.

Requirement: The system is in the Boot Command Mode (pattern 18).

1. Press the pilot key several times with a short keypress (SC) until "F2" lights up red.
2. Press the pilot key with a long keypress (LC)
  - After 2 second keypress "F2" lights up green by way of confirmation.
  - The IP address data is reset to the default values once the key is released. The startup then continues normally.

Default values of the IP address data:

- IP address: 192.168.104.13
- Subnet mask: 255.255.255.0
- Gateway: 0.0.0.0

### 6.4.4.6 Wiring Adapter Malfunction Mode

The system switches to this mode if an unsuitable wiring adapter is fitted into one of the wiring adapter slots. Missing wiring adapters are also indicated.

The Wiring Adapter Malfunction Mode is indicated by one or more red flashing LEDs F1...F4. The LED number corresponds to the number of the Wiring Adapter slot concerned. The SYS-LED flashes green as in the Normal Mode.

**Tab. 99** Example pattern for Wiring Adapter Malfunction Mode

Pattern No.	F0	F1	F2	F3	F4	SYS	Meaning
20	—	—	R —	—	—	G —	Incorrect or missing wiring adapter in slot WA2

### 6.4.4.7 Warning Mode

The system switches to the Warning Mode if a problem occurs that impairs the system's normal operation. The Warning Mode is indicated by the red-green flashing SYS-LED and is exited only once the problem is remedied.

The different warnings are binary coded and are indicated by the LEDs (F0...F4).

**Tab. 100 Warning Mode combination patterns**

F0	F1	F2	F3	F4	SYS	Error	Category / Description	Remedy
-	-	-	-	R	R G		Fan out of operation	Check connections or replace fan
-	-	-	R	-	R G		Oscillator Tuning Block missing (can cause DECT problems)	Contact Support. The Oscillator Tuning Block has to be loaded.

### 6.4.4.8 Boot Mode

The boot mode enables an Emergency Upload via the Ethernet interface. This is required whenever there is no longer any executable system software stored on the communication server for whatever reason or if a downgrade to an older software version is to be carried out.

The Boot Mode is indicated by the SYS-LED flashing red.

To access the boot mode press the pilot key during the LED test red, which is executed during the start-up phase (see pattern 1, [Tab. 92](#)). The length of time the pilot key is pressed is irrelevant. Pattern 21 is displayed once the Boot Mode has been entered.

**Tab. 101 Combination patterns in Boot Mode**

Pattern No.	F0	F1	F2	F3	F4	SYS	Meaning
21	-	-	-	-	-	R -	Boot Mode active

The boot mode remains active until the Emergency Upload is completed or the system is restarted manually.

### 6. 4. 4. 9 Error Mode

The system switches to the Error Mode if a problem or error occurs that prevents the system’s normal operation. This can be a hardware error or a software installation error.

The Error Mode is indicated by the red SYS-LED flashing very rapidly and is exited only once the error is remedied. In many cases this involves a system restart.

The different errors are binary coded and are indicated by the LEDs (F0...F4).

**Tab. 102 Error Mode combination patterns**

F0	F1	F2	F3	F4	SYS	Error	Category / Description	Remedy
-	-	-	-	R	R-R-R	no LIC	Hardware: No licence: EIM card missing or defective	Insert or replace EIM card
-	-	-	R	-	R-R-R		Hardware: No IP address data on the EIM card	Run a first start or replace EIM card
-	-	-	R	R	R-R-R		Hardware: EIM card not compatible	Replace EIM card
-	-	R	-	-	R-R-R	E-505	Hardware: DRAM defective	Replace communications server
-	-	R	-	R	R-R-R	E-530	Hardware: BBT Integrity Check: No free replacement blocks available	Replace communications server
-	-	R	R	-	R-R-R	E-531	Hardware: BBT Integrity Check: Inconsistent Bad Block Table	Replace communications server
-	-	R	R	R	R-R-R	E-532	Hardware: BBT Integrity Check: ECC has detected an uncorrectable read error	Replace communications server
-	R	-	-	-	R-R-R	E-533	Hardware: BBT Integrity Check: Block 0 is faulty; the Bad Block Table cannot be used	Replace communications server

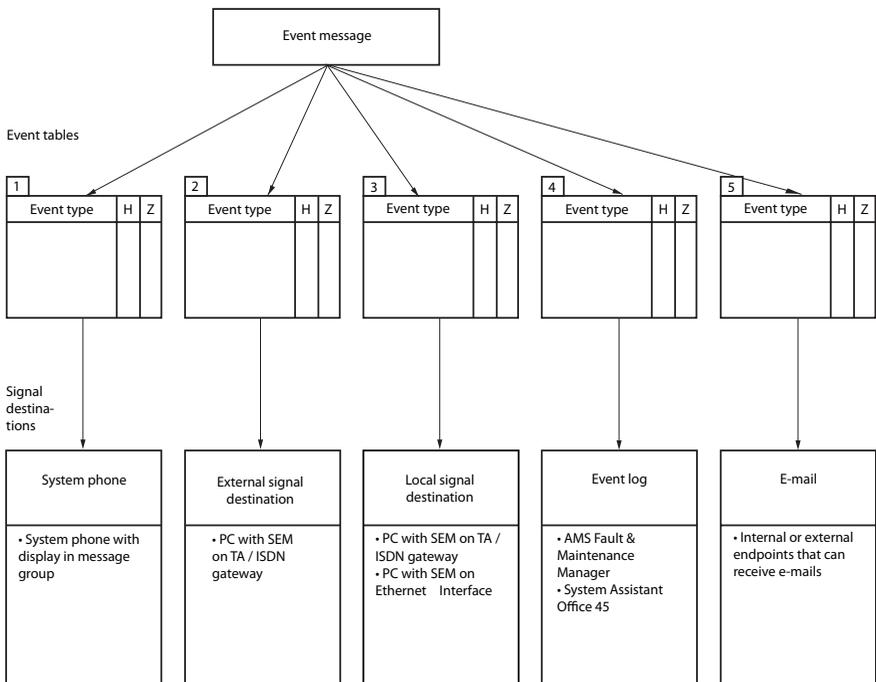
F0	F1	F2	F3	F4	SYS	Error	Category / Description	Remedy
-	R	-	-	R	R-R-R	E-404	Software: Version transfer not possible: The country and/or sales channel in the EIM card does not match the configuration data in the Flash	Using AMS set a different EIM card and / or sales channel.
-	R	-	R	-	R-R-R	E-405	Software: Version transfer not possible: Software release unknown.	Load new system software onto mainboard
-	R	-	R	R	R-R-R	E-522	Software: Incompatible Boot software	Contact Support. A different Boot software may have to be loaded.
-	R	R	-	-	R-R-R	E-700	Software/Hardware: General copy error	Load correct system software onto mainboard or replace communication server.
-	R	R	-	R	R-R-R	E701	Software: Copy error between file system and DRAM	Load correct system software onto mainboard or replace communication server.
-	R	R	R	-	R-R-R		Factory Server Error: No DHCP	For the manufacturer only
-	R	R	R	R	R-R-R		Factory Server Error: No TCP connection	For the manufacturer only
R	-	-	-	-	R-R-R	E-534	Software: corrupt file system	Contact Support. The file system must be reformatted.
R	R	R	R	R	R-R-R	EUL	Software: Emergency Upload Functional system software no longer available	New system software must be loaded with EUL via LAN (see <a href="#">page 175</a> ).
-	-	-	-	-	-		Software: General boot error	Contact Support. A different Boot software may have to be loaded.
R-R-R	R-R-R	R-R-R	R-R-R	R-R-R	R-R-R		Software: General error	Load new software onto mainboard. If unsuccessful, contact Support.

## 6.5 Operations supervision

### 6.5.1 Event message concept

The system generates an event message every time an event or error occurs. The event tables in the Fault & Maintenance Manager are used to specify how often an event message of a particular type may be generated by the system over a given time period before the event message is sent to the allocated signal destinations.

The Fault & Maintenance Manager has 5 event tables that can be allocated to 5 signal destinations:



F = Frequency  
T = Time period

**Fig. 78** Distribution principle for an event message

## 6.5.1.1 Event types

**Tab. 103 Event types, in alphabetical order**

Event/ error message	Trigger condition	Details
<i>ACD server out of service</i>	ACD server defined as destination but not responding.	Date, time
<i>Application card CPU2 Data communication out of service</i>	Data communications with the CPU2 applications card have been interrupted for an unusually long period of time (> 1 hour) due to an error (after a Windows update or due to other reasons).	Date, time
<i>Application card CPU2 Data communications back in service</i>	Data communications with the CPU2 applications card have been restored.	Date, time
<i>ATAS: connection established</i>	ATAS: connection (re) established	Date, time
<i>ATAS: Connection lost</i>	ATAS: connection lost	Cause (0: Logoff, 1: missing cycle signal), date, time
<i>Card out of service</i>	A card previously in operation has stopped functioning.	Number of the expansion slot, date, time
<i>CL Printer Jam</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• No response from system printer for past 4 minutes</li> <li>• Printer out of paper or switched off</li> </ul>	interface, interfaces/card number, port number, date, time
<i>CL-Printer available again</i>	Printout on the system printer available once again	Date, time
<i>Compatible PMS application</i>	The external hotel management system (PMS application) is suitable for communicating with the communication server.	Date, time
<i>Connection to PMS system established</i>	A connection with a hotel management system (PMS system) has now been successfully established.	Date, time
<i>Connection to PMS system failed</i>	An unsuccessful attempt was made to establish a connection with a hotel management system (PMS system).	Date, time
<i>CTI first party Connection lost</i>	The ATPC3 first-party link was interrupted because the cycle signal is missing.	User number, date, time
<i>CTI first party Connection re-established</i>	The ATPC3 first-party link was (re)established	User number, date, time
<i>CTI third party: Connection lost</i>	The ATPC3 third-party link was interrupted	Cause (0: Logoff, 1: missing cycle signal), date, time
<i>CTI third party: Connection re-established</i>	The ATPC3 third-party link was (re)established	Date, time
<i>E-mail successfully sent</i>	The system has now successfully sent an e-mail.	Date, time
<i>ESME reachable</i>	The LAN connection between the SMSC and the ESME is now available	IP address, date, time
<i>ESME unobtainable</i>	The LAN connection between the SMSC and the ESME is interrupted	IP address, date, time

Event/ error message	Trigger condition	Details
<i>Ethernet deactivated due to overload</i>	The system has detected an overload on the Ethernet interface. The interface is temporarily deactivated.	Date, time
<i>Ethernet re-activated</i>	The overload on the Ethernet interface no longer exists. The interface has been reactivated.	Date, time
<i>External event message destination not reachable</i>	External signal destination not automatically reachable	Cause (0: Busy / 1: Not available / 2: Barred / 3: Undefined), date, time
<i>External event message destination reachable</i>	External signal destination is now reachable	Date, time
<i>External SMS gateway unobtainable</i>	External SMS gateway unobtainable by network provider or incorrectly configured	Date, time
<i>Fan failure</i>	The fan is jammed or defective or the connection is no longer making contact. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Parameter = 0: No more fans in operation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>→ Risk of overheating: Replace defective fan.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	Parameter, date, time
<i>FIAS command buffer full</i>	The command buffer to the PMS interface is full.	Date, time
<i>FIAS interface usable again</i>	The command buffer to the PMS interface is back below the critical limit.	Date, time
<i>ICC overflow</i>	Individual cumulative counter or cost centre counter overflow	User number, cost centre, exchange line, room number, date, time
<i>Inactive radio unit port</i>	Radio unit not responding	Card number, port number, date, time
<i>Incompatible PMS application</i>	The external hotel management system (PMS application) is not suitable for communicating with the communication server.	Date, time
<i>Incorrect Ethernet configuration</i>	The setting of the connected switch port and the Ethernet setting of the communication server do not match. This can result in collisions and blocked connections.	Cause, date, time
<i>Incorrect or missing wiring adapter</i>	There is no wiring adapter in the wiring adapter slot or the wiring adapter fitted is unsuitable.	Slot number, date, time
<i>Insufficient bandwidth</i>	An user in an AIN is trying to set up a connection and the bandwidth currently available with the WAN link is insufficient.	Link ID, WAN link name, available bandwidth in Kbit/s, date, clock
<i>Internal event message destination not reachable</i>	Local output blocked or not available	Cause (0: Busy / 1: Not available / 2: Barred / 3: Undefined), date, time
<i>Internal event message destination reachable</i>	Local output available once again	Date, time
<i>IP system phone licence is now available</i>	A sufficient number of licences is now available again for Aastra 5360ip/5361ip/5370ip/5380ip.	Date, time
<i>IP system phone: Connection lost</i>	An IP system phone is no longer connected to the communication server.	User number, terminal ID, date, time

Event/ error message	Trigger condition	Details
<i>IP system phone: Connection re-established</i>	An IP system phone has re-established the connection to the communication server.	User number, terminal ID, date, time
<i>LCR on alternative network provider</i>	Automatic switch from primary network provider to secondary network provider using LCR function	Provider ID, date, time
<i>Licence for mobile phone available</i>	A sufficient number of licences is now available again for integrated mobile phones.	Date, time
<i>Licence for PMS interface available</i>	Either the <i>Hospitality PMS Interface</i> licence is missing or the number of <i>Hospitality PMS Rooms</i> licences available is insufficient.	Number of licensed rooms, number of configured rooms, date, time
<i>Licence invalid; restricted operating mode 4 hours after restart</i>	The system software loaded requires a software release licence. Without this licence the system software's functionality is severely restricted 4 hours after the restart.	Date, time
<i>Licences for offline operations expired</i>	The maximum duration of two hours for the temporary licence activation has expired.	Date, time
<i>Limits reached for busy lamp field</i>	A busy lamp field on an SIP/Aastra SIP terminal could not be configured because the system limit for the platform has been reached.	Terminal ID, key number, date, time
<i>Local supply error on the radio unit</i>	Local power supply of a SB-4+ / SB-8 / SB-8ANT radio unit failed or unavailable	Card number, port number, date, time
<i>Local supply on radio unit available</i>	Local power supply of a SB-4+ / SB-8 / SB-8ANT is now again available	Card number, port number, date, time
<i>Mains voltage failure</i>	Event message once mains power is restored <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Mains power has failed more frequently than entered in the trigger table</li> </ul>	Date, time
<i>Malfunction</i>	With 3-digit error ID Hardware or software error during self-test (for more details see <a href="#">Tab. 102</a> ). With 5-digit error ID: General error during operation. The error ID can help Support to pinpoint the possible cause of the error.	Error ID, date, time
<i>Memory usage below the critical range</i>	The free storage space available in the file system has once again increased above 3 Mbytes	File type ID, Usage, Date, Time
<i>Memory usage over the critical range</i>	The free storage space available in the file system has dropped below 3 Mbytes	File type ID, Usage, Date, Time
<i>Monitor Event</i>	Monitor Event	Monitor Type, Date, Time
<i>No DECT-DSP channels available</i>	DECT channels on DSP-0x overloaded	Date, time
<i>No DTMF receiver available for integrated mobile phones</i>	A permanent DTMF receiver (for detection suffix dialling function codes) could not be assigned to an integrated mobile phone with enhanced functionality.	BCS Ref., date, time
<i>No free IP system phone licences</i>	An Aastra 5360ip/5361ip/5370ip/5380ip was unable to register because there are too few IP system phone licences.	Date, time
<i>No response from network</i>	No answer to Call Setup on BRI-T/PRI interface	Port number of the exchange line circuit, date, time

Event/ error message	Trigger condition	Details
<i>Node: Connection lost</i>	A node is not connected to the Master for a certain amount of time (configurable).	Node number, date, time
<i>Node: Connection reestablished</i>	A node is reconnected with the Master for a certain amount of time (configurable) after an interruption.	Node number, date, time
<i>Not enough mobile phone licences</i>	The connection setup with an integrated mobile phone has failed because the number of configured mobile phones is greater than the number of licences available. All the integrated mobile phones remain blocked until a sufficient number of licences are available.	Number of licences, number of configured mobile phones, date, time
<i>NTP: Synchronisation failed</i>	Time synchronization via the NTP server (NTP = Network Time Protocol) has failed.	Date, time
<i>NTP: Synchronisation reestablished</i>	Time synchronization via the NTP server (NTP = Network Time Protocol) has been restored.	Date, time
<i>Numbers missing</i>	Card(s) not full logged on <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Insufficient memory reserved in the numbering plan to enable allocation of numbers to all users: Type in missing numbers by hand</li> </ul>	Date, time
<i>Outgoing call rejected</i>	Call rejected by the network <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>On any line: error code 34</li> <li>On required line group: error code 44</li> </ul>	Port number of the exchange line circuit, cause, date, time
<i>Overheat</i>	The temperature inside the housing is too high. The appropriate measures must be taken immediately to improve the heat dissipation, e. g. by providing the required clearances, lowering the ambient temperature or installing the fan from the rack-mounting set (Aastra 430 only).	Date, time
<i>Port out of service</i>	A port previously in operation has stopped functioning.	Number of the slot, relevant port number, date, time
<i>QSIG licence limit reached</i>	Maximum number of licensed outgoing connections with QSIG protocol exceeded	Route number, user number, date, time
<i>Radio unit port active</i>	The radio unit is responding again	Card number, port number, date, time
<i>Recording error</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Card not fitted</li> <li>Card not logged on</li> <li>Card defective</li> </ul>	Card number, date, time
<i>Remote maintenance disabled</i>	Remote maintenance has been deactivated	Date, time
<i>Remote maintenance is activated</i>	The remote maintenance has been activated (Unfiltered output to local destinations).	Date, time
<i>Reset card</i>	A reset was carried out for one card	Number of the expansion slot, date, time

Event/ error message	Trigger condition	Details
<i>Satellites missing after supervision time</i>	After an AIN update (Master and all satellites) some satellites no longer have a connection to the Master.	Total satellites missing, Satellites rolled back, Date, Time
<i>Send e-mail failed</i>	The system was unable to send an e-mail because an error occurred.	Cause/action, e-mail client, additional parameter, date, time
<i>SIP account available</i>	The SIP account is unable to register with the SIP provider for a specific reason (0: Provider cannot be reached / 1: No authorization). The event is triggered only if the parameter <i>Registration required</i> is configured to <i>Yes</i> .	Provider, account, date, time
<i>SIP account available</i>	The SIP account has successfully registered with the SIP provider.	Provider, account, date, time
<i>SMS gateway reachable</i>	External SMS gateway again reachable	Date, time
<i>Software upgrade IP system phone failed</i>	The software update of an Aastra 5360ip/5361ip/5370ip/5380ip has failed for the stated reason.	User number, terminal ID, reason, date, time
<i>Software upgrade IP system phone successful</i>	The software update of an Aastra 5360ip/5361ip/5370ip/5380ip has now been successfully completed after unsuccessful attempt(s).	User number, terminal ID, date, time
<i>Software upload</i>	During an upload in system status: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Update running</i></li> <li>• <i>Supervision running</i></li> <li>• <i>Normal running</i></li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• New communication server software loaded, starting...</li> <li>• New communication server software crashed, rollback performed</li> <li>• New communication server software started and running well</li> </ul> Date, time
<i>Sync. lost on trunk re-established</i>	A BRI/PRI interface entered in the clock pool has been successfully re-synchronized with the system clock.	Port number, date, time
<i>Sync. lost re-established</i>	Synchronization with the network has been restored on at least one BRI/PRI interface.	Date, time
<i>Synchronisation loss to exchange</i>	A BRI/PRI interface entered in the clock pool has lost the system clock	Port number, date, time
<i>System Overload</i>	Network access attempted when all lines are seized or the system is overloaded.	Route number, user number, date, time
<i>The communication server has been restarted!</i>	The communication server was restarted manually or automatically due to an error.	Date, time
<i>The licence limit for Aastra SIP terminals has been reached</i>	An Aastra SIP terminal is unable to register or use the video functionality because there are too few <i>Aastra SIP Terminals</i> or <i>Aastra Video Terminals</i> licences available.	Parameter 1=1: Missing <i>Aastra SIP Terminals</i> licence, Parameter 2=1: Missing <i>Aastra Video Terminals</i> licence, Parameter 3=3: Max. number of licences, date, time

Event/ error message	Trigger condition	Details
<i>The licence limit for CSTA sessions has been reached</i>	An applicable is unable to set up a CSTA session to monitor/check a terminal because there are too few <i>CSTA Sessions</i> licences available.	Max. number of licences, date, time
<i>The licence limit for standard SIP terminals has been reached</i>	A standard SIP terminal is unable to register or use the video functionality because there are too few <i>SIP Terminals</i> or <i>Video Terminals</i> licences available.	Parameter 1=1: Missing <i>SIP Terminals</i> licence , Parameter 2=1: Missing <i>Video Terminals</i> licence, Parameter 3=3: Max. number of licences, date, time
<i>The licensing limit for the maximum number of users has been reached</i>	When the 37th user is created in AMS or WebAdmin and no <i>Aastra 470 Expansion</i> licence is in place.	Date, time
<i>The maximum number of users is back below the licence limit</i>	An <i>Aastra 470 Expansion</i> licence is now available or the number of users has been reduced to 36.	Date, time
<i>TLS certificate update failed</i>	The update of the TLS certificate for an SIP node or SIP endpoint via FTP has failed and needs to be renewed manually.	Type of endpoint, node ID or certificate name, date, time
<i>TLS certificate update successful</i>	A TLS certificate was successfully renewed	Type of endpoint, node ID or certificate name, date, time
<i>TLS certificate was generated: Update non-Aastra endpoints now</i>	A TLS certificate has been generated. If generation is manual, the certificate must be imported manually into the Aastra SIP nodes. The certificate must always be imported manually on all non-Aastra nodes and non-Aastra endpoints.	Date, time
<i>TLS certificate will expire soon</i>	A TLS certificate for an SIP node or SIP endpoint is about to expire and needs to be renewed.	Type of endpoint, node ID or certificate name, date, time
<i>Too few FoIP channels</i>	Setting up a fax connection via T.38 failed because no FoIP channel is available.	Available FoIP channels on nodes
<i>Too few licences for PMS interface</i>	The <i>Hospitality PMS Interface</i> licence or a sufficient number of <i>Hospitality PMS Rooms</i> licences are now available.	Date, time
<i>Too few VoIP channel licences</i>	Connection setup failed because the licence limit for simultaneously active VoIP channels has been reached.	No. of licensed VoIP channels, Date, Time
<i>Too few VoIP channels</i>	An user is trying to set up a connection that requires one or more VoIP channels which are currently not available.	Available VoIP channels on this node, date, time
<i>Too many event messages</i>	Number of message types exceeds limit entered in the table on: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• "Synch. loss on BRI/PRI"</li> <li>• "Outgoing Call Rejected"</li> <li>• "No response from network"</li> </ul>	Date, time
<i>Too many network interfaces</i>	System capacity exceeded	Card No., date, time
<i>Too much user data</i>	System capacity exceeded	Date, time
<i>Total Synchronization loss</i>	Network synchronisation has failed on all BRI/PRI interfaces	Date, time

Event/ error message	Trigger condition	Details
<i>Trial licence expired</i>	The duration for which a trial licence can be used for a specific feature has expired and there is no valid licence.	Licence ID, date, time
<i>User does not answer</i>	No answer to incoming DDI call from user on S bus or DSI	DDI No., date, time
<i>User event message</i>	With *77[nnnn] from a terminal	nnnn [0000...99999], user number, date, time
<i>Wake-up call unanswered</i>	The room wake-up call was not answered	Room No., date, time
<i>Wake-up order confirmed</i>	The room wake-up call has now been answered	Room No., date, time

## 6.5.1.2 Event tables

Event tables list all the event messages the system is capable of generating (see [Tab. 103](#)).

The frequency of event messages can range between "0" and "20".

The time period is indicated in hours, ranging between "0" and "672". The longest time period "672" corresponds to 28 days or 4 weeks.

If the frequency of event messages is set to "0", the time period will also automatically be set to "0". No event message is sent to a signal destination.

If the frequency of event messages is set to "1", the time period will automatically be set to "0".

The event message will immediately be sent to the signal destinations.

If the time period is set to "0" hours, the frequency of the event message will automatically be set to "1".

The event message will immediately be sent to the signal destinations.

There are 4 event tables in the Fault & Maintenance Manager. Each event table can be individually configured and allocated to one of the 4 signal destinations. This means it is possible to decide which event message – if any – should be sent to a particular signal destination either immediately, with a delay or not at all.

### Example

**Tab. 104 Example of event table**

Event type	Frequency	Time period
<i>Total Synchronization loss</i>	10	1
<i>System Overload</i>	1	0
<i>No response from network</i>	0	0

In this example an event message is sent to the message destinations if there is a *Total synchronization loss* event message when the system generates the event message 10 times within 1 hour. With the event type *System overload*, an event message is sent to the signal destinations immediately; while the event type *No response from network*, no event message needs to be sent to the signal destinations.

### 6.5.1.3 Signal destinations

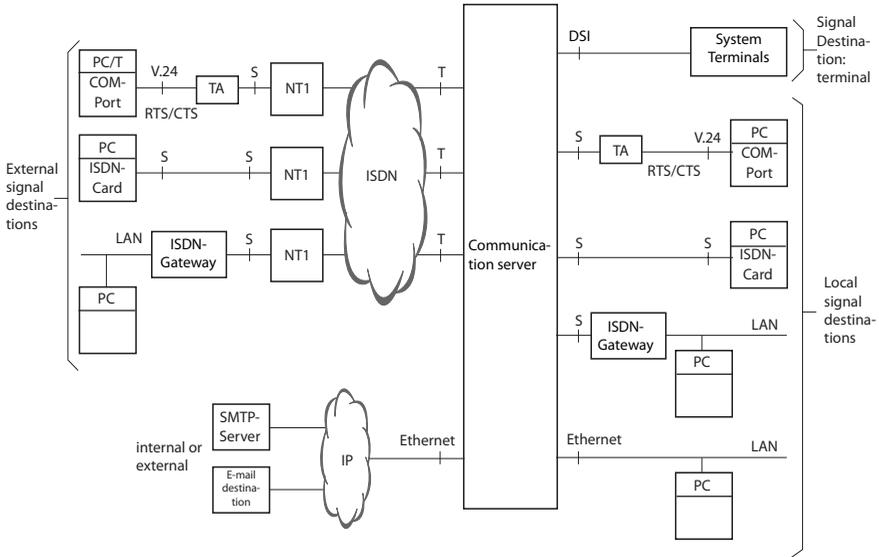
5 signal destinations can be configured in the Fault & Maintenance Manager. Any one of the five event tables can be assigned to each signal destination.

When a communication server is first started, one event table with its own number is assigned to each signal destination.

Signal destinations include:

- System phones with alphanumeric display)
- External signal destination (signal destination PC (SEM) via ISDN or LAN / WAN to T interface)
- Local signal destination (e.g. PC (SEM) / printer, PC (SEM) on S interface / Ethernet interface)
- Event log (event protocols in the Fault & Maintenance Manager)
- Internal or external e-mail destinations

There are several possibilities for connecting the signal destinations with a communication server:



**Fig. 79 Overview of connection possibilities for the various signal destinations**

## Signal destination system phone

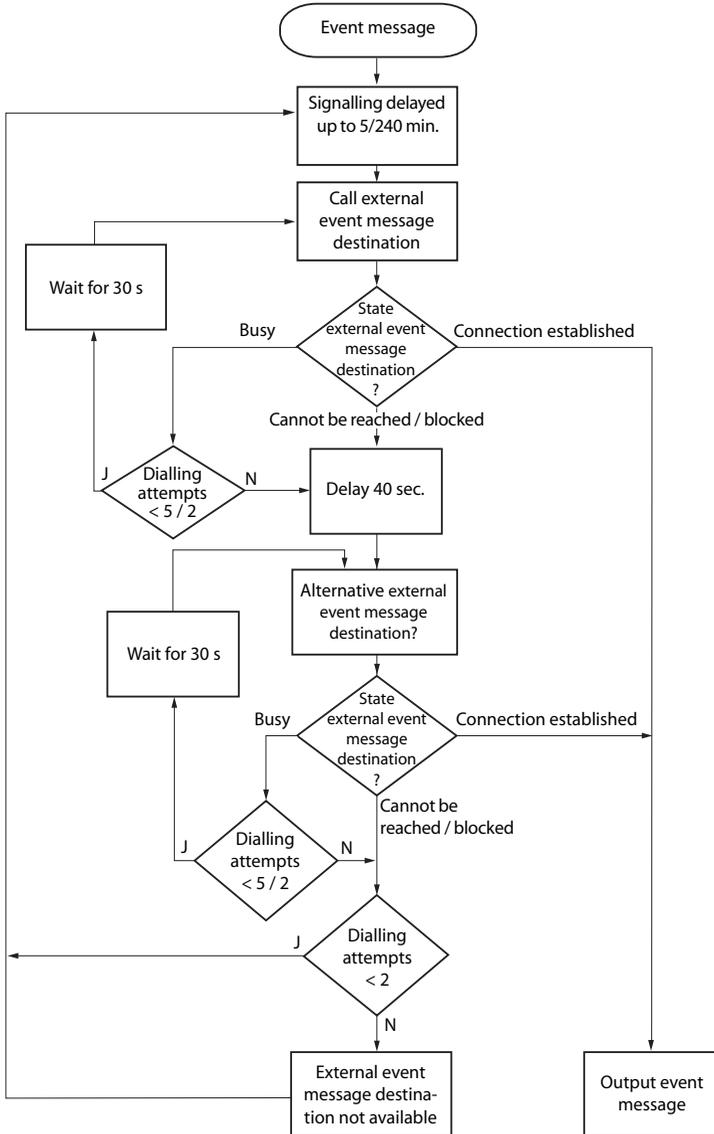
Depending on the allocated event table, event messages are sent to all the system phones that have a display and are entered in message group 8.

## External signal destinations

Depending on the event table allocated, event messages are sent to a specified external signal destination. Two external signal destinations can be specified:

- 1 preferred external signal destination
- 1 alternative external signal destination

## Signalling an event message to an external signal destination



**Fig. 80** Flowchart of the signalling of an event message to an external signal destination

The following principles govern the way event messages are signalled to an external signal destination:

- Individual event messages are not signalled if they occur at short intervals. The event messages are stored temporarily for 5 minutes and then sent together to the external signal destination.
- If over a period of one hour an attempt is made unsuccessfully to send the event messages to the external signal destination, the signalling period is extended from 5 minutes to 4 hours. As soon as the event messages are successfully output at the external signal destination, the time period is reset to 5 minutes.
- If over a period of 1 hour an attempt is made unsuccessfully to send an event message to an external signal destination, the number of dialling attempts is reduced from 5 to 2. As soon as an event message has been successfully sent, the number of dialling attempts is increased to 5 again.
- If the attempt to send an event message to an external signal destination was unsuccessful, the system will generate the event message *External event message destination missing*".



**Note:**

Event tables and signal destinations should be set in such a way that the event message *External event message destination missing* is signalled immediately to any signal destination still available.

### Routing an external signal destination

The following points are to be taken into account when specifying the routing to external signal destinations:

- If the external signal destination is dialled up via an exchange access prefix followed by the call number, the call will be routed via route 3. To use a different route, you need to configure a route selection.
- Digit barring for external calls and printer faults (in the case of call logging) do not affect outgoing event messages.

### Configuring external signal destinations

If a system sends an event message, the event message opens a PPP communication channel via the public network from the communication server to a Terminal Adapter, connected either directly to a PC with the System Event Manager (SEM) software program or indirectly via a LAN / WAN (ISDN gateway). Once the event message has been confirmed, the system clears down the PPP connection.

Two external signal destinations (*Preferred event message destination* and *Alternative event message destination*) can be configured.

The PPP via ISDN transmission protocol is used for the connection between the communication server and the external signal destination.

The following parameters need to be selected or entered in the Fault & Maintenance Manager for each of the two external signal destinations:

- Call number of the external signal destination (possibly as a route selection)  
Possible external signal destinations include:
  - Ordinary exchange output (route 3 is used)
  - Route selection
  - Cost centre selection (route 3)After initialization, the call charges are allocated to cost centre 100.
- IP address of the PC if the communication server is to connect with the PC via an ISDN gateway.  
If the communication server is to connect with the PC without ISDN gateway, the *IP address* entry should remain empty.
- TCP port number (the default value is 1062; if the value is changed in the SEM, it will have to be altered accordingly on the communication server side.)
- User name and password of the dial-up networking of the PC or ISDN gateway, to gain access via the TA or the ISDN gateway to the PC with the SEM.

### Other necessary configurations

The following parameters must also be configured.

- In the Fault & Maintenance Manager:  
System ID of the communication server. This is important so that the communication server can be identified by the SEM. The system ID must match the one in the AMS Shell. In the system ID you can store a serial number or the DDI number for the remote maintenance of the system (20 digits).
- In the Configuration Manager:  
Route 3 must be allocated trunk groups with digital network interfaces (*Routes* setting).

### Local signal destinations

Depending on the event table allocated, event messages are sent to a specified local signal destination.



**Note:**

Event tables and signal destinations should be set in such a way that the event message *Internal event message destination missing* is signalled immediately to any signal destination still available.

### Configuring a local signal destination on an S interface / ISDN

As with an external signal destination the event message opens a PPP communication channel from the communication server to a Terminal Adapter, connected either directly to a PC with the System Event Manager (SEM) or indirectly via a LAN (ISDN gateway). Once the event has been confirmed, the system clears down the PPP connection.

### Configuring a local signal destination on an S interface

The event messages are displayed in PC format.

The *Local output interface* must be set on *IP destination* in the Fault & Maintenance Manager.

The following parameters need to be selected or entered in the Fault & Maintenance Manager:

- Destination: *Local PPP* communication protocol.
- Call number of the local signal destination (the call number is checked by the system, a warning message will appear if the call number is incorrect)
- IP address of the PC if the communication server is to connect with the PC via an ISDN gateway.  
If the communication server is to connect with the PC without ISDN gateway, the *IP address* entry should remain empty.
- TCP port number (the default value is 1062; if the value is changed in the SEM, it will have to be altered accordingly on the communication server side.)
- User name and password of the dial-up networking of the PC or ISDN gateway, to gain access via the TA or the ISDN gateway to the PC with the SEM.

### Configuring a local signal destination on ISDN

The event messages are displayed in PC format.

The *Local output interface* must be set on *IP destination* in the Fault & Maintenance Manager.

The following parameters need to be selected or entered in the Fault & Maintenance Manager:

- Destination: PPP via ISDN communication protocol
- Call number of the local signal destination (the call number is not checked by the system, if the entered call number is incorrect, the system will issue the event message *Internal message destination is missing*).
- IP address of the PC if the communication server is to connect with the PC via an ISDN gateway.  
If the communication server is to connect with the PC without ISDN gateway, the *IP address* entry should remain empty.
- TCP port number (the default value is 1062; if the value is changed in the SEM, it will have to be altered accordingly on the communication server side.)
- User name and password of the dial-up networking of the PC or ISDN gateway, to gain access via the TA or the ISDN gateway to the PC with the SEM.

### **Configuring a local signal destination on an Ethernet interface**

A PC (with the System Event Manager) connected either directly to the Ethernet interface or to the communication server via a LAN (LAN connection) can be configured as the local signal destination.

The event messages are displayed in PC format.

The *Local output interface* must be set on *IP destination* in the Fault & Maintenance Manager.

The following parameters need to be selected or entered in the Fault & Maintenance Manager:

- Destination: Ethernet
- IP address of the PC
- TCP port number (the default value is 1062; if the value is changed in the SEM, it will have to be altered accordingly on the communication server side.)

### SNMP destination

5 SNMP destinations can be defined. These destinations are linked with the same event table as the local destination, and so the same rules are applied. Forwarding to the SNMP destinations can be activated and deactivated independently of the forwarding to the local and external signal destinations.

For configuration in the Fault & Maintenance Manager proceed as follows:

1. In the tab *SNMP destination* enter the IP address under *IP address/host name* (or the host name if DNS is configured)
2. Configure the remaining parameters
3. Repeat the procedure for all the destinations
4. Switch the parameter *Destination SNMP event message* to *On*.

SNMP stands for "Simple Network Management Protocol" and is used by Network Management Systems (NMS). The systems of the Aastra 400 series support the SNMP V1 version.

If the Network Management System is to know the potential events of the communication system, the corresponding system components have to be defined in the form of configurable objects (Managed Objects: MO). These objects and the related event messages are stored in an object library referred to as the Management Information Base (MIB). The current MIB version can be downloaded from <https://pbxweb.aastra.com>. The user name and password are required in order to access the data. Registration with the "Aastra Application Partner Programm" is required.

### Signal destination Event Log

When the communication server is initialized, the signal destination Event Log is automatically allocated event table 4. In event table 4 the frequency for all event types (with the exception of the event type *Too many event messages*) is set on "1" and the time period on "0". This means that all the event messages are immediately entered in the event log.

If the signal destination event log is assigned a different event table or if event table 4 is reconfigured, the event messages are entered in the event log in accordance with the new event table or the new configuration.

The Event Log consists of four protocols:

- Event messages (max. 254 entries)
- System failures (max. 80 entries)

- Power failures (max. 10 entries)
- Card failures (max. 150 entries)

If the maximum number of entries is exceeded, the oldest entry in each case is deleted.

These 4 Event Logs protocols are not printed out automatically; likewise, your attention is not drawn to any incoming event message. The protocols have to be retrieved manually in the Fault & Maintenance Manager or printed out.

**See also:**

Event messages entered in the protocols of the Event Logs can also be retrieved on the Office 45 using the System Assistant function on Office 45 (see "[Maintenance menu on the Office 45](#)", page 226).

## E-mail signal destination

With the e-mail client integrated in the communication server, event messages can be sent to internal or external e-mail destinations. After a first-start of the communication server, the signal destination *E-mail destination* is automatically allocated event table 5. Up to 5 e-mail destinations can be defined in the Fault & Maintenance Manager, and e-mail notification can be activated or deactivated globally.

For the communication server to send the e-mails, the IP address or the host name, the port and, where necessary, a user name with password must be configured under *SMTP server* in the Configuration Manager.

## Testing the signal destination configuration

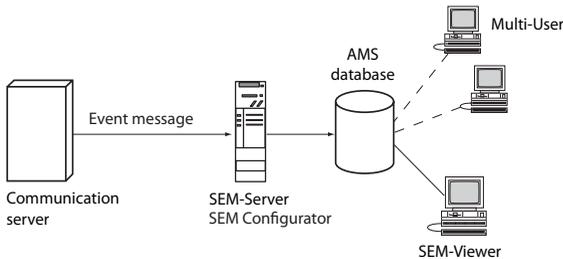
To test the configuration, you can trigger a test event message via the Fault & Maintenance Manager. The event message is signalled without any delay, directly at the selected signal destination.

If the communication server is connected with AMS via a TA, the test event messages will be signalled only once the connection is cleared down.

## 6.5.2 System Event Manager SEM

The System Event Manager (SEM) is a program capable of receiving and handling communication system event messages. It consists of the components:

- SEM Configurator
- SEM Server
- SEM Viewer



**Fig. 81 SEM concept (general)**

Event messages are sent to the SEM Server by the communication server. The SEM Server stores all the important data in the corresponding AMS database. This data can be retrieved and edited using the SEM Viewer.

### SEM Configurator

The SEM Configurator is used to start or end the SEM Server.

The relevant TCP port has to be activated for data transmission.

The event types can be assigned different priorities in the SEM Configurator.

The SEM Configurator is also used to set, for each individual AMS database, the way in which the SEM Server should respond to each incoming event message (e. g. send e-mail, print out on a printer).

If you want a beep or melody to signal that the SEM Server has received an event message, make the appropriate setting in the SEM Configurator.

### SEM Server

The SEM Server receives event messages from communication servers and stores all the important data in the corresponding AMS databases.

For the program to operate correctly there has to be at least one AMS database.

## SEM Viewer

The SEM Viewer is used to edit the event messages stored by the SEM Server; they can then be filtered, sorted, printed or written into a file according to, for example, status, customer, communication server or priority.

The SEM Viewer can also be used to set, for each AMS database, the way in which the SEM Server should respond to an event message (e.g. send e-mail, print out on a printer).

### 6.5.3 Operating state and error displays

#### 6.5.3.1 System operating state

During the start-up phase, various self-tests are performed and the individual phases are shown in the LED display on the front panel (see "[Startup Mode](#)", page 192).

When operation is OK, the SYS LED flashes green, regularly, and once per second in the display on the front panel. The system is in normal mode. The assignment of internal or external ports, password-free access as well as remote access via an external dial-up connection to AIN are shown as status in the LED display (see "[Normal Mode](#)", page 193 and "[Feature Mode](#)", page 193).

#### 6.5.3.2 System error displays

Whenever the system detects an error, it displays the corresponding error code in the LED on the front panel (providing the communication server is still powered and the display is working).

There are 3 types of error:

- System is running but a problem has been detected on one or more wiring adapter slots. (See "[Wiring Adapter Malfunction Mode](#)", page 197.)
- Warning. System is still capable of running but the system function may be impaired (see "[Warning Mode](#)", page 198).
- Serious error. System is no longer able to run (see "[Error Mode](#)", page 199).

In the event of sporadic errors check the installation for earth loops.

### 6. 5. 3. 3 Terminals

**Tab. 105 Malfunctions on the terminal side**

Error description	Error cause / error handling
Digital system phones on the DSI bus display <i>Not Configured</i> along with the node number, the slot number and the port number.	No terminal has yet been created on the connected port or an incorrect terminal selection digit (TSD) has been allocated to the terminal: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check system and terminal configuration</li> <li>• Check installation and connecting cable</li> </ul>
System phones do not obtain dial tone when seizing a line; display reads <i>Not available</i> .	System is prebarred <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Unlock system</li> <li>• Replace phone or interface card if necessary</li> </ul>
Terminals with configurable dialling method experience sporadic malfunctions whenever control key is pressed.	System earth must not be connected on terminals configured for MFV / DTMF (double signalling on Flash / earth key).
Analogue terminals do not obtain a dial tone when off-hook.	No terminal has been created on the connected port or the terminal created has not been allocated to a user. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Create a terminal and allocate a user</li> <li>• Check installation or connecting cable</li> </ul>

### 6. 5. 3. 4 Operating state of the Aastra DECT radio units

Each radio unit is equipped with 3 LEDs. The operating state the radio units is indicated by different colours and flashing sequences in cycles of 1 s, specifically by one of the two outer LEDs on the SB-4+ and by both outer LEDs on the SB-8 / SB-8ANT (separately for each DSI bus). Each character (G, R or -) corresponds to 1/8 of a second.

Example:

During the synchronization phase GGGRRRRR the LED flashes periodically 1/2 second green, 1/2 second red.

**Tab. 106 Flashing sequences of the status LED on the DECT radio unit**

State	Cycle	Meaning
No flashing	- - - - - - - -	LED switched off / software not running / RU not connected
Red	R R R R R R R -	Error: DSI bus not in order
	R - - - - - - -	Power supply error or DSI line too long
Green / red	G R R R R R R R	Startup process: DSI ok
	G R G R G R G R	Software downloading
	G G G G G R R R	Synchronizing
	G G G G G G R	Starting DECT
	G G G G G R G R	HF Power Down / DECT System Status Passive <sup>1)</sup>

State	Cycle	Meaning
Green		Normal operation (requirement: LED not switched off):
	G - - - - - - -	All B channels available
	G G G G - - - -	1 to 3 B channels busy
	G G G G G G G -	> 3 B channels busy

- 1) This operating state appears in the following situations:
- during a configuration data upload
  - After a system first-start
  - If the parameter *DECT system state* is set to *Passive* in the AMS Configuration Manager
  - If a radio unit is not allocated to a Location Area (this may happen after adding a radio unit to a system with several Location Areas, which is the case when a radio unit has already been set in a Location Area unequal 0). In this case the added radio unit has to be manually allocated to the selected Location Area.)

An orange status LED indicates that the DECT signalling is active, i.e. DECT sequences are currently being transmitted between the cordless phone and the radio unit. Examples:

- With each keystroke on the cordless phone the LED briefly lights up orange.
- During a cordless phone software download the orange LED remains lit until the download is completed.

On an SB-8ANT radio unit the middle LED indicates whether the internal or external antennas are active. If the LED is lit green, the external antennas are active.



**Note:**

After the system initialization the radio unit starts in status "DS1 ok". It is only ready to operate once at least one DECT user has been entered in the numbering plan or the parameter *DECT system state* has been set to *Active* in the AMS Configuration Manager.

## 6. 5. 3. 5 Malfunction of the Aastra DECT radio unit

**Tab. 107 Malfunction of the Aastra DECT radio unit**

Error description	Error cause / error handling
No radio connection in a coverage area.	<p>Check LED on radio unit:</p> <p>LED is flashing red (short red phase):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check power supply / line length of DSI bus cable</li> </ul> <p>LED is flashing red (long red phase):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check DSI bus cable</li> <li>• Unplug DSI bus cable for one minute, then reconnect</li> </ul> <p>LED is flashing green (long green phase):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• All B channels busy</li> </ul>
Radio unit not activated.	<p>LED on radio unit is flashing red/green (various patterns):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Radio unit in startup phase</li> </ul> <p>LED on radio unit is flashing red (long red phase):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Radio unit defective</li> </ul> <p>If LED on radio unit not flashing:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check trunk connections</li> <li>• Radio unit defective</li> <li>• LED of the radio units deactivated throughout the system</li> </ul>

## 6. 5. 3. 6 Malfunctions of Aastra DECT cordless phones

**Tab. 108 Malfunctions of Aastra DECT cordless phones**

Error description	Error cause / error handling
No display.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Switch cordless phone on and test</li> <li>• Replace or charge battery</li> </ul>
No radio link to radio unit; no aerial symbol.	<p>Check coverage area (within range of a radio unit).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check radio units in this section</li> </ul> <p>Cordless phone not logged on to system</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Log cordless phone on</li> </ul>
Impossible to dial.	<p>Keypad blocked (keylock)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Reactivate keypad</li> </ul>
No dial tone.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check radio units in this section</li> </ul>
Poor connection quality (echo effect).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Activate echo compensation</li> </ul>
Cordless phone beeps approx. every 10 s during a call (or in standby) while battery indicator is flashing.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Replace battery immediately, either after or during the call (see cordless phone user's guide)</li> </ul>
Call breaking up.	<p>You are moving out of range.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Find a location with a better radio contact</li> </ul>

Error description	Error cause / error handling
A cordless phone is called from a different system phone, but cannot be reached.	<p>Busy tone obtained and display reads <i>Busy</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cordless phone is busy</li> </ul> <p>Congestion tone obtained and display reads <i>Circuit overload</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• All radio channels busy</li> </ul> <p>If congestion tone is obtained after 8 seconds and display reads <i>No answer</i>. Reasons why the cordless phone could not be reached:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It is switched off</li> <li>• It is not within reachable radio area</li> <li>• No radio channels currently available</li> <li>• It is not logged on to system</li> <li>• Call diverted due to unobtainable</li> </ul>
Cordless phone is not ringing.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Activate tone ringing</li> </ul>
The cordless phone cannot be configured; PIN missing (or forgotten).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Reset PIN using AMS (overwrite)</li> </ul>

### 6. 5. 3. 7 Malfunctions of the DECT charging bays

Tab. 109 Malfunctions of the DECT charging bay

Error description	Error cause / error handling
The cordless phone will not charge.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Connect power supply</li> <li>• Check the charging contacts</li> <li>• Check battery and replace if necessary.</li> </ul> <p>About the charging process:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Battery symbol on the cordless phone is flashing (Office 135) or filling up (Office 160, Aastra 600d) when the battery is being charged.</li> <li>• Check tone indicates correct contact.</li> </ul>

### 6. 5. 3. 8 Longclicks on Aastra DECT cordless phones

In normal DECT cordless phone operation, long-clicking the following keys accesses additional functions directly.

**Tab. 110 Longclicks on Aastra DECT cordless phones**

Function	Office 135	Office 160	Aastra 600d
In a list box: change scroll direction. Long-click "↔" switches to "↕" and vice versa.	Foxkey right	Foxkey right	—
Direct access to the configuration menu	M	M	—
Switch cordless phone on/off	C , 0	0	End key
Switches over to the next radio system temporarily.	1	1	2
Indicates the radio system parameters (cordless phone IPEI and radio system PARK). With each additional call the next radio system is indicated in each case if there are other logons.	2	2	—
Indicates the cordless phone's internal diagnostics.	3	3	—
Switches to a special alarm menu of the cordless phone.	—	—	3 <sup>1)</sup>
Indicates the data of the valid radio unit ("Show Measurement Mode", see "Planning DECT Systems" in the User's Guide).	4	4	—
Indicates the cordless phone's software version.	5	5	—
Jumps to the cordless phone's service menu.	—	—	5
Indicates battery charge status and the type.	6	—	—
Indicates the communication server's software version.	7	7	—
Activates "semi" key lock. See Operating Instructions for details.	8	8	—
Activates key lock. See Operating Instructions for details.	9	9	#
Switch dialling type DTMF on/off. See Operating Instructions for details.	*	*	—
Switch tone ringing on/off.	—	—	*
Jumps to the cordless phone's tone ring menu.	Loud-speaker key	Loud-speaker key	—
Menu for display contrast, display backlighting, area tone and overload tone. See Operating Instructions for details.	#	#	—
Configuration mode for hotkey. See Operating Instructions for details.	Hotkey	Hotkey	Hotkey
Switch error messages on/off (default value: off). Messages relating to the following errors cannot be switched on/off: HS logon error, incorrect location registration, no locatable radio unit, network, system or radio unit overload.	5 + 3	5 + 3	—

<sup>1)</sup> Aastra 630d only

### 6.5.3.9 Overload code displays Office 135 / Office 160

The overload code displays on the DECT cordless phones Office 135 and Office 160 can be activated and deactivated using the following key combination (toggle function):

Long-click key 5 and then long-click key 3 (long = long-click = > 2 seconds).

The overload code display is always deactivated after system initialization.

**Tab. 111 DECT overload code displays Office 135**

Code	Name	Error description	Error handling
05 / 06	IPEI Not Accepted	Cordless phone already logged on to system under different number.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check existing subscriber No. under "Config"; log that particular subscriber off</li> <li>• Try again</li> </ul>
10	Authentication failed	Logon error	Try again
51	DL 04 Expiry	Timer (on cordless phone) has expired	Try again Try again
70	Timer Expired	MM timer in system has expired (during logon)	Try again
44	Failure to set up traffic bearer	Connection cannot be set up as too many cordless phones are phoning within the same range	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Try again</li> <li>• If still unsuccessful after several attempts, "Reset cordless phone" (normally it is enough to press key 0 with a long keystroke and switch back on)</li> </ul>
45	No Quiet Channel	No channel available, same as code 44	Same measures as for code 44
80	Reject Location Area. Not allowed. Mis-used to indicate wrong "design" version.	Wrong mode during logon.	Logon to the system < 15 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Office 135: Long-click "Home"</li> </ul> Logon to the system > 15: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Office 135: Short-click "Home"</li> </ul>

## 6.5.4 Other aids

### 6.5.4.1 Maintenance menu on the Office 45

The System Assistant function on the Office 45 under the *Maintenance* menu item can be used to retrieve system information which in the event of a malfunction provides important clues as to the cause of the fault:

**Tab. 112 Maintenance menu selection:**

1: View	3: Delete
2: Print	4: Both

You can select from the following menu items:

1. System status
2. System failures
3. Mains voltage failures
4. Event messages

### System status menu item

**Tab. 113 Display of the system status lines**

== SYSTEM STATUS		
BCS: 0000	CC: 00000	
SUBS: 0011	NSUB: 0000	LINE: 0001
DIST: 0001	DDIN: 0000	ABB: 1000
Back with [←- ]		

The system status lines provide useful information for a more in-depth fault diagnosis. They can be printed out and sent to customer support on request.

**Tab. 114 The displayed data and what it means**

Display	Description	Normal value / idle state	Note
BCS: xxxxx	Number of existing BCS references	BCS: 00000	Each active connection needs 2 BCS references
CC: xxxxx	Number of existing call controls	CC: 00000	For each BCS reference there is one or more CC
SUBS: xxxxx	Number of users in the system	SUBS: 0000	0000: No ports busy
NSUB: xxxxx	Number of PISN users in the system	NSUB: 0000	0000: No PISN user in the system
LINE: xxxxx	Number of lines in the system	LINE: 0000	0000: No lines defined

Display	Description	Normal value / idle state	Note
<i>DIST</i> : xxxx	Number of call distributions in the system	<i>DIST</i> : 0000	0000: No call distribution defined
<i>DDIN</i> : xxxx	Number of DDI numbers in the system	<i>DDIN</i> : 0000	0000: No DDI numbers defined
<i>ABB</i> : xxxx	Number of abbreviated dialling numbers in the system	<i>ABB</i> : 1000	1000: Default value unchanged

## System failures menu item

**Tab. 115 System failures display**

== SYSTEM FAILURESE				52
W 15/09/2010	13:32	011A59F2,	011A5A8C,	01156FFE
W 06/12/2010	13:32	011A59F7	011A5A82	01156FF1

The system's last 80 system failures (resets) are displayed. The resets are incremented in the counter in the top right (0...255).

Significance of the display: Error type W = restart (watchdog), date, time

When printing, only the last 4 addresses are printed out.

## Power failures menu item

**Tab. 116 Power failures display**

== POWER FAILURES	
01.12.10	16:13

Only the restart time is recorded.

## Event messages menu item

**Tab. 117 Event messages display**

== EVENT MESSAGES		
01.12.10	00:01	OUTGOING CALL REJECTED TO LINE: 12.25
02.12.10	09:15	TOO MANY EVENT MESSAGES

The event messages are identical to the displays obtained when entering the configuration with System Assistant on the Office 45. They are stored in event table 4 (see "Event message concept", page 201). The entries in the Maintenance menu remain stored until they are deleted with the *Delete* command.

### Remarks

- The display on the event message header line ("1") indicates the number of event messages that have occurred (max. 255). You can use the cursor keys to scroll through the lines (not visible)(e.g.4 events 1/2: 2 events on page 1,2 events on page 2)
- The last 254 entries can be displayed.
- The event entries record only the time of the error incident, not the time at which it was remedied.
- More detailed information on triggering and printing event messages can be found in "[Event message concept](#)", [page 201](#).



#### **See also:**

Event messages can also be called up in the AMS Fault & Maintenance Manager (see "[Signal destination Event Log](#)", [page 216](#)).

### **6. 5. 4. 2      Fault & Maintenance Manager**

For information on the Fault & Maintenance Manager see "[Event message concept](#)", [page 201](#).

### **6. 5. 4. 3      System Event Manager SEM**

For information on the System Event Manager (SEM) see "[System Event Manager SEM](#)", [page 218](#).

### **6. 5. 4. 4      Measuring equipment for cordless systems**

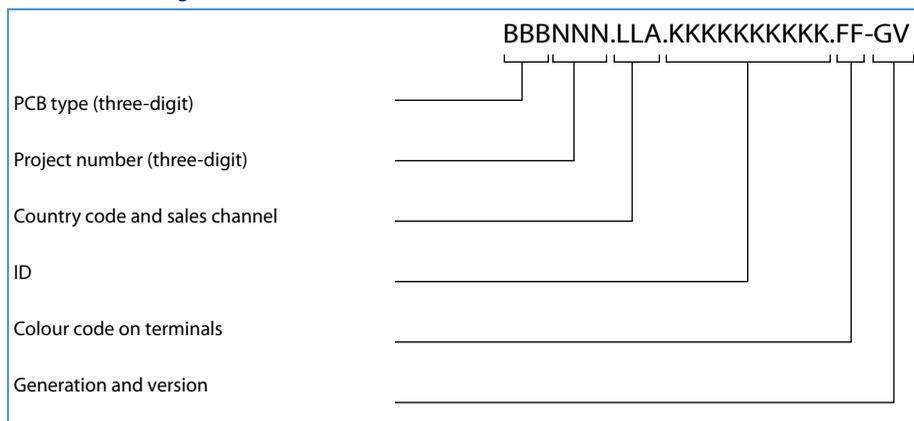
The aids required for measuring out DECT systems are described under "Planning DECT Systems" in the User's Guide.

## 7 Annex

This chapter informs you about the systematic designation system and provides you with an equipment overview of the communication server with cards, modules and optional components. It also provides the technical data for interfaces, communication server and system terminals as well as a table overview of the digit key assignments and function keys for the system phones. Finally here is a list of functions and products no longer supported, licence information on third-party software products, and a table summary of related documents and online help.

### 7.1 Systematic Designation System

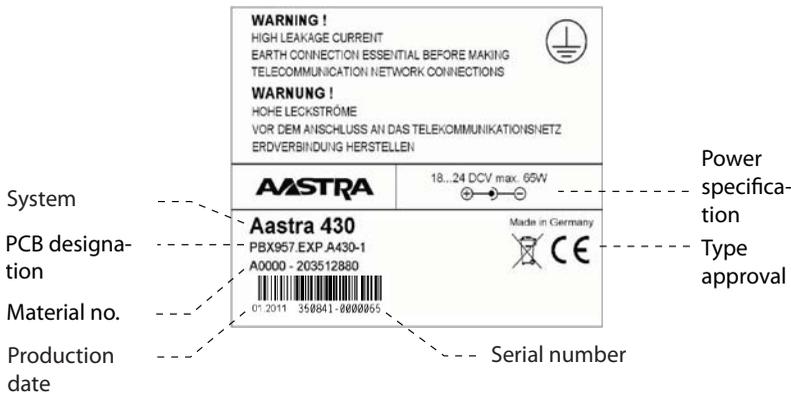
Tab. 118 PCB Designation



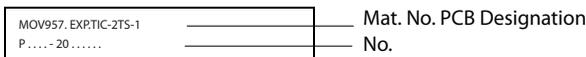
**Tab. 119 Explanation of the PCB Designation**

Part of the PCB designation	Remarks and examples
PCB type (three-digit)	LPB = Printed circuit board fitted KAB = Cable fitted PBX = Complete system SEV = Set packed EGV = Terminal packed MOV = Module/card packed
Project number (three-digit)	957 (System Aastra 415/430)
Country code and sales channel (one to three-digit, with full stops)	Two-digit country code as per ISO 3166, Sales channel (1...9) for various sales channels. Example: EXP = Export channels (not country-specific) Space = No country code
ID	ETAB4 = analogue terminal card with 4 FXS interfaces
Colour code on terminals	Colour designation in accordance with EU directive
Generation and version	Example: -3C = 3rd generation, version C (Generation new modules: -1) Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A generational change is effected following substantial changes to the functionality of a PCB.</li> <li>• A change of version is effected following small changes to functions or once faults have been remedied. Backward compatibility is guaranteed.</li> </ul>

## 7.2 Rating Plate and Designation Stickers



**Fig. 82 Rating plate (example Aastra 430 communication server)**



**Fig. 83 Designation stickers (example interface card)**

## 7.3 Equipment Overview

**Tab. 120 Equipment Overview**

Designation	Description
PBX957.EXP.A415-2	Aastra 415 basic system
PBX957.EXP.A430-2	Aastra 430 basic system
MOV957.EXP.SM-DSPX1-1	DSP module SM-DSPX1
MOV957.EXP.SM-DSPX2-1	DSP module SM-DSPX2
MOV957.EXP.TIC-2AB-1	TIC-2AB trunk card (2 x FXO)
MOV957.EXP.TIC-4AB-1	TIC-4AB trunk card (4 x FXO)
MOV957.EXP.TIC-1PRI-1	TIC-1PRI ISDN primary trunk card
MOV957.EXP.TIC-2TS-1	TIC-2TS ISDN basic trunk card/terminal interface card
MOV957.EXP.TIC-4TS-1	TIC-4TS ISDN basic trunk card/terminal interface card
MOV957.EXPEADP4-3	Terminal card EADP4 (4 x DSI-AD2)
MOV957.EXP.ETAB4-2	Terminal card ETAB4 (4 x FXS)
LPB520.EXP.ODAB-1	Options card ODAB
MOV957.EXP.WA-2W	Wiring Adapter 2W
MOV957.EXP.WA-TS0	Wiring Adapter TS0
MOV957.EXP.WA-TS1	Wiring Adapter TS1
MOV957.EXP.WA-1PRI	Wiring adapter 1PRI
ELE957 CABLE-RJ45-6M-1	Prefabricated system cable 12 x RJ45, 6 m
CABLE PATCH 8P 1M SHIELDED BLUE	RJ45 patch cable, blue, screened, 1 m
CABLE PATCH 8P 2M SHIELDED BLUE	RJ45 patch cable, blue, screened, 2 m
SEV957.EXP.RM-A150-1	Aastra 415 rack-mounting set
SEV957.EXP.RM-A300-1	Aastra 430 rack-mounting kit incl. fan
SEV957 FAN	Aastra 430 fan
SEV957.EXP.CC-1	Cable cover set for Aastra 415/430
SEV957.EXP.ISYLINK-TX-1	isyLink Set TX
SEV957.EXP.ISYLINK-HX-1	isyLink Set HX

## 7.4 Technical Data

### 7.4.1 Network interfaces

The following technical data applies to the network interfaces:

#### Basic rate interface BRI-T

- Standard Euro ISDN interface as per CTR-3
- Configurable for point-to-point or point-to-multipoint operation

#### Analogue network interfaces

- Voice path with A/D and D/A conversion (standard PCM, A-law)
- Transmission as per ES 201 168 (level country-specific)
- Signalling as per TBR 21
- Pulse or DTMF dialling, Flash signal
- Loop current detection
- Call charge receive 12 or 16 kHz (frequency and level setting country-specific)
- CLIP detection in accordance with ETS 300 778-1

### 7.4.2 Terminal interfaces

The following technical data applies to the terminal interfaces:

#### Digital terminal interface DSI

- Proprietary interface, two-wire
- Two system phones of the Aastra 5300 series can be connected per interface (AD2 protocol) <sup>1)</sup>
- One SB-4+/SB-8 radio unit can be connected (with 8 channels the SB-8 radio units requires two DSI interfaces)
- Power supply min. 75 mA, limiting at approx. 80 mA, terminal voltage 36...48 V
- Line termination in the phone
- Transparent transmission of 2 PCM channels

---

<sup>1)</sup> Office 10, Office 25, Office 35, Office 45/45pro are supported as before

## Digital terminal interface BRI-S

- Standard Euro ISDN interface
- Phantom power supply min. 140 mA, limiting at approx. 170 mA, terminal voltage 36...41 V
- Up to 8 terminals can be connected
- Maximum of 2 simultaneous call connections

## Analogue terminal interface FXS

- Configurable multifunctional interface for connecting analogue terminals and equipment.
- For the FXS mode *Phone/fax, two-wire door* and *general bell* the following applies:
  - Voice path with A/D and D/A conversion (standard PCM, A-law)
  - Transmission as per ES 201 168 (level country-specific)
  - Constant-current loop supply approx. 25 mA (with loop resistances  $\leq 1000 \Omega$ )
  - Receive pulse or DTMF dialling
  - CLIP display on all analogue terminal interfaces (only on 2 analogue terminals simultaneously).
  - Ringing supply 40...43 V 50 Hz at load 4 k $\Omega$ ; no DC voltage overlay (country-specific versions also with 25 Hz)
  - No control key detection
  - No charge signalling pulses
- For more technical details and cable requirements see "[Multifunctional FXS interfaces](#)"; page 117.

## 7.4.3 Communication server

**Tab. 121 Dimensions and weights**

	<b>Aastra 415/430 for wall mounting</b>	<b>Aastra 415/430 in rack mounting</b>
Height	65 mm	65 mm
Width	360 mm	483 mm
Depth	294mm	294mm
Weight (excl. mains cord, interfaces cards, modules and packaging)	2.4 kg	2.5 kg

**Tab. 122 Electrical isolation of interfaces**

<b>Interface</b>	<b>Aastra 415/430</b>	
Analogue network interfaces	0.2 kV	Operating isolation
Digital network interfaces BRI		Operating isolation
Control input on ODAB		no isolation, but input impedance > 8 k $\Omega$
Freely connectable relay contacts on ODAB	0.2 kV	
Door intercom system on ODAB	0.2 kV	
Control input on FXS interface		no isolation
Control output on FXS interface		no isolation
Audio input		no isolation

**Tab. 123 Ambient conditions**

<b>Condition</b>	<b>Aastra 415/430</b>
Ambient temperature	5 ? to 45 ?
Relative air humidity	30% to 80%, non-condensating

**Tab. 124 Electrical data**

	<b>Aastra 415</b>	<b>Aastra 430</b>
Class of protection	1	
Input voltage	95 V...253 V, 48...62 Hz	
Input current	approx. 0.11 A...0.7 A	approx. 0.11 A...1.0 A
Resistant to voltage breaks	< 6 ms	
Power input with min. configuration	ca. 15 W	ca. 15 W
Power input with max. configuration	ca. 50 W	ca. 75 W
Undervoltage limit (system reset, data backup)	< 90 V	

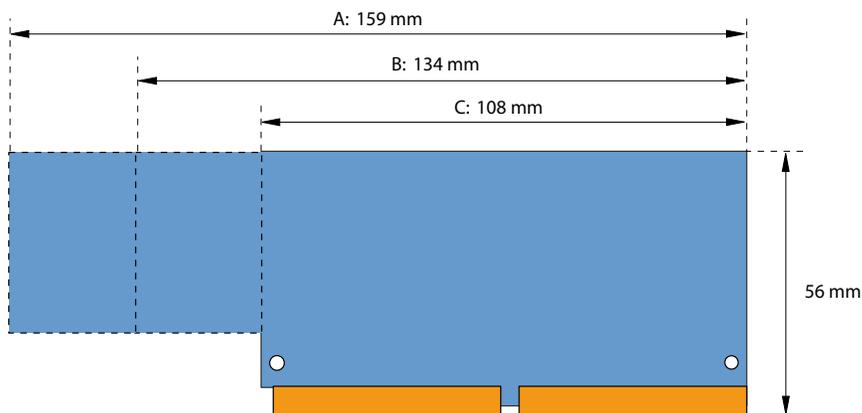
**Tab. 125 Heat dissipation**

	<b>Aastra 415</b>	<b>Aastra 430</b>
Maximally configured system	approx. 37 W = 135 kJ/h	approx. 50 W = 180 kJ/h

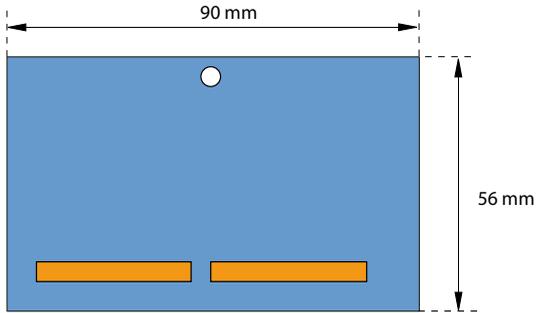
## 7.4.4 Design of interface cards, modules and wiring adapters

**Tab. 126 Design**

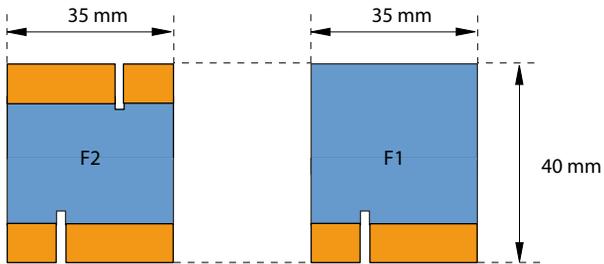
Card/module	Design
TIC-4TS	B
TIC-2TS	B
ESST	C
TIC-4AB	B
TIC-2AB	B
TIC-1PRI	C
EAAB2	B
EADP4	C
EAD4V	A
EAD4C	A
ETAB4	B
ODAB	C
SM-DSP1	D
SM-DSP2	D
SM-DSPX1	D
SM-DSPX2	D
WA-TS0	F2
WA-TS1	F2
WA-2W	F1
WA-1PRI	F1



**Fig. 84 Dimensions of interface cards (design A, B, C)**



**Fig. 85** Dimensions of system module (design D)



**Fig. 86** Wiring adapter dimensions (design F)

## 7.4.5 LAN switch

**Tab. 127 LAN switch on the mainboard**

- 10Base-T / 100Base-TX switch
- Fully compliant with IEEE 802.3/802.3u
- Auto MDI-X, Autopolarity, Autonegotiation
- Flow control fully supported (half duplex: backpressure flow control, full duplex: IEEE 802.3x flow control)
- Embedded SRAM for packet storage
- 1024-entry look-up table, direct mapping mode
- QoS: 802.1p VLAN tag, DiffServ/TOS field in TCP/IP header, IP-based priority

## 7.4.6 Digital and IP system phones

**Tab. 128 Digital and IP system phones**

	<b>Aastra 5360/5360ip, Aastra 5361/5361ip, Aastra 5370/5370ip, Aastra 5380/5380ip, Office 10, Office 25, Office 35, Office 45/45pro</b>
Ambient temperature in operation	0 °C to 40 °C
Relative humidity in operation	30 % to 80 %
Admissible storage temperature	-25 ° to 45 °C
Power consumption, digital system phones	see table "Average power requirements of terminals", page 67 and table "Maximal power requirements of the system phones on the DSI bus", page 107
Power consumption, IP system phones	see System Manual for "Aastra Intelligent Net (AIN) and IP system phones"

**Tab. 129 Dimensions and weights, digital and IP system phones**

<b>Terminals</b>	<b>Height (Type of mounting)</b>	<b>Width</b>	<b>Depth (Type of mounting)</b>	<b>Weight</b>
Aastra 5360, Aastra 5360ip, Aastra 5361, Aastra 5361ip	115 mm (Desktop 25 °) 151 mm (Desktop 45 °) 199 mm (Wall)	262 mm	198 mm (Desktop 25 °) 166 mm (Desktop 45 °) 90 mm (Wall)	approx. 850g
Aastra 5370, Aastra 5370ip	115 mm (Desktop 25 °) 151 mm (Desktop 45 °) 199 mm (Wall)	262 mm	198 mm (Desktop 25 °) 166 mm (Desktop 45 °) 90 mm (Wall)	approx. 875 g
Aastra 5380, Aastra 5380ip	115 mm (Desktop 25 °) 151 mm (Desktop 45 °) 199 mm (Wall)	262 mm	198 mm (Desktop 25 °) 166 mm (Desktop 45 °) 90 mm (Wall)	approx. 935 g

Terminals	Height (Type of mounting)	Width	Depth (Type of mounting)	Weight
Expansion key module Aastra M530	115 mm (Desktop 25 °) 151 mm (Desktop 45 °) 199 mm (Wall)	95 mm	198 mm (Desktop 25 °) 166 mm (Desktop 45 °) 90 mm (Wall)	approx. 180 g
Expansion key module Aastra M535	115 mm (Desktop 25 °) 151 mm (Desktop 45 °) 199 mm (Wall)	128 mm	198 mm (Desktop 25 °) 166 mm (Desktop 45 °) 90 mm (Wall)	approx. 325 g
Office 10	55 mm	82 mm	200 mm	approx. 360 g
Office 25	56 mm	224 mm	203 mm	approx. 500 g
Office 35	75 mm	254 mm	203 mm	approx. 680 g
Office 45/45pro	97 mm	336 mm	203 mm	approx. 960 g
Expansion key module EKP	44 mm	82 mm	133 mm	approx. 115 g
Alpha keyboard AKB	21 mm	190 mm	82 mm	approx. 150 g

## 7.4.7 Aastra DECT Radio units

### GAP functionality

The following table contains the network features as defined in the GAP standard. For each feature a separate column indicates whether it is supported by communication servers of the Aastra 400 family or Aastra DECT cordless phones.

**Tab. 130 Features supported as per GAP standard**

No.	Feature	PP	In Aastra DECT cordless phones	FP	In Aastra 400
1	Outgoing call	M	✓	M	✓
2	Off hook	M	✓	M	✓
3	On hook (full release)	M	✓	M	✓
4	Dialled digits (basic)	M	✓	M	✓
5	Register recall	M	✓	O	✓
6	Go to DTMF signalling (defined tone length)	M	✓	O	✓
7	Pause (dialling pause)	M	✓	O	—
8	Incoming call	M	✓	M	✓
9	Authentication of PP	M	✓	O	✓
10	Authentication of user	M	✓	O	—
11	Location registration	M	✓	O	✓
12	On air key allocation	M	✓	O	✓
13	Identification of PP	M	✓	O	—
14	Service class indication / assignment	M	✓	O	—
15	Alerting	M	✓	M	✓
16	ZAP	M	3	O	—
17	Encryption activation FP initiated	M	✓	O	—
18	Subscription registration procedure on-air	M	✓	M	✓
19	Link control	M	✓	M	✓
20	Terminate access rights FP initiated	M	✓	O	✓
21	Partial release	O	✓	O	✓
22	Go to DTMF (infinite tone length)	O	—	O	—
23	Go to Pulse	O	—	O	—
24	Signalling of display characters	O	✓	O	—
25	Display control characters	O	—	O	—
26	Authentication of FP	O	✓	O	✓
27	Encryption activation PP initiated	O	—	O	—
28	Encryption deactivation FP initiated	O	—	O	—
29	Encryption deactivation PP initiated	O	—	O	—
30	Calling Line Identification Presentation (CLIP)	O	✓	O	✓
31	Internal Call	O	✓	O	—
32	Service Call	O	—	O	—

PP: Portable Part

FP: Fixed Part

M: Mandatory (this feature must be supported by GAP compliant equipment)

O: Optional

—: The Aastra DECT cordless phones and Aastra 400 communication servers do not support the feature.

## Technical data

**Tab. 131 Aastra DECT Radio units**

Duplex method	Time-division multiplex, 10 ms frame length
Frequency range	1880 MHz to 1900 MHz
Frequency bands (carrier)	10
Channel spacing (carrier distance)	1,728 MHz
Transmission rate	1152 kbit/s
Duplex channels per carrier SB-4+ / SB-8	6 / 12
Number of channels (duplex channels) SB-4+ / SB-8	60 / 120
Modulation	GFSK
Data transfer rate	32 kbit/s
Voice encoding	ADPCM
Transmit power	250 mW peak value 10 mW, average power per channel
Range	30 to 250 m
Max. line length to radio unit	
- power supply via DSI bus (0.5mm)	1200 m
- with power supply unit (9–15 VDC, 400 mA)	1200 m
Ambient temperature, radio unit in operation	-10 ° to 55 °
Admissible storage temperature	-25 ° to 55 °
Relative humidity in operation	30 % to 80 %
IP class of protection	IP 30
Dimensions: Radio unit W x H x D:	165 x 170 x 70 mm
Weight: Radio unit	320 g
Local power supply to radio unit (optional)	Plug-in power supply unit (Euro-plug)



Office 45/45pro, Office 135/135pro and all models of Office 160, if the communication server language is set to Greek. Greek letters are always displayed in upper case on the phone displays:

**Tab. 133 Greek-script digit key assignment**

	-.?1!,:;'" -.?1!,:;'" Δ Ε Ζ 3 D E F Δ Ε Ζ 3 d e f		Α Β Γ 2 Α Β Γ Α Β Γ 2 a b c
	Δ Ε Ζ 3 D E F Δ Ε Ζ 3 d e f		Η Θ Ι 4 Γ Η Ι Η Θ Ι 4 g h i
	Κ Λ Μ 5 J K L Κ Λ Μ 5 j k l		Ν Ξ Ο 6 Μ Ν Ο Ν Ξ Ο 6 m n o
	Π Ρ Σ 7 Ρ Q R S Π Ρ Σ 7 p q r s		Τ Υ Φ 8 Τ Υ Φ Τ Υ Φ 8 t u v
	Χ Ψ Ω 9 W X Y Z Χ Ψ Ω 9 w x y z		+ 0 + 0
	* / ( ) < = > % £ \$ ¤ ¥ ¢ @ & § * / ( ) < = > % £ \$ ¤ ¥ ¢ @ & §		Space # Space #



**Notes:**

- The Aastra 5360 and Office 25 phones does not have a graphics-compatible display and therefore cannot display all the characters featured (see also the corresponding user guide).
- On the Office 160 cordless system phone the space character is stored under digit 0 and the special characters are stored under the #-key instead of the \*-key.
- If only the language of the phone and not the communication server language is set to Greek, only the static and dynamic menus will appear in Greek letters on the phone. In such cases it is not possible to key in Greek letters or to edit texts in Greek letters (e.g. run alpha dialling, edit private phone book, etc.)

## 7.5.2 Alpha keyboard Aastra 5380/5380ip

The integrated alphanumerical keyboard on the Aastra 5380/5380ip is available in a QWERTY and AZERTY version. The special characters can be called up using the "Ctrl" key and the "Shift" key.

**Tab. 134 Integrated alphanumerical keyboard Aastra 5380/5380ip**

Key	<Key>	Shift + <key>	Ctrl + <Key>	Ctrl + Shift + <Key>
A	a	A	ä å à â ã ä æ	Ä Å ä å Ä Å Æ
B	b	B		
C	c	C	ç	Ç
D	d	D		
E	e	E	é è ê ë	É È Ê Ë
F	f	F		
G	g	G		
H	h	H		
I	i	I	í î ï	Í Î Ï
J	j	J		
K	k	K		
L	l	L		
M	m	M		
N	n	N	ñ	Ñ
O	o	O	ö ó ô õ ø	Ö Ö Ó Ô Õ Ø
P	p	P		
Q	q	Q		
R	r	R		
S	s	S	ß	
T	t	T		
U	u	U	ü ú û	Ü Ú Û
V	v	V		
W	w	W		
X	x	X		
Y	y	Y	ÿ	
Z	z	Z		
@	@	@		
+	+	+	-.?!,:;."/ \ () = < > % £ \$ ö ¥ ª & § ζ ι	

### 7. 5. 3 Alphanumerical keyboard (AKB)

The alpha keyboard for Office 35 and Office 45 is available in 2 variants, which differ in the keypad printing.

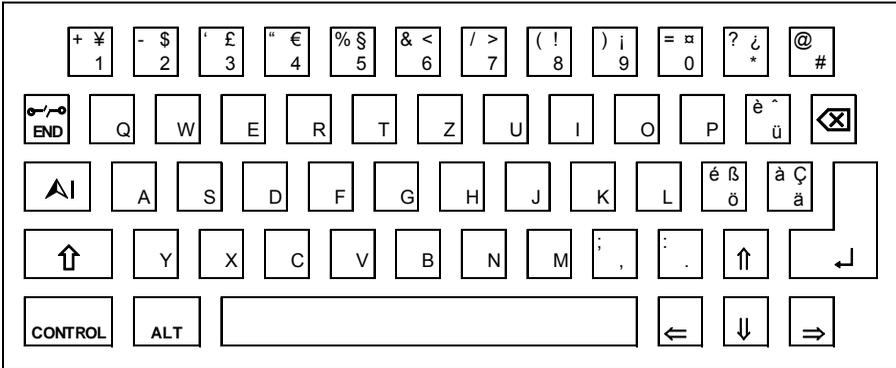


Fig. 87 AKB QWERTZ

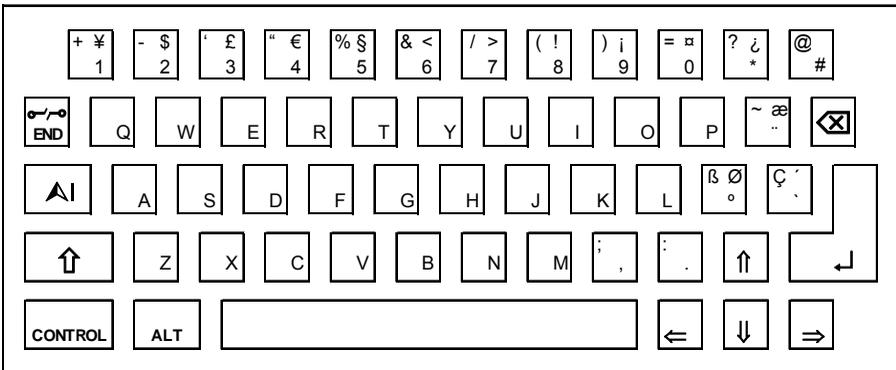
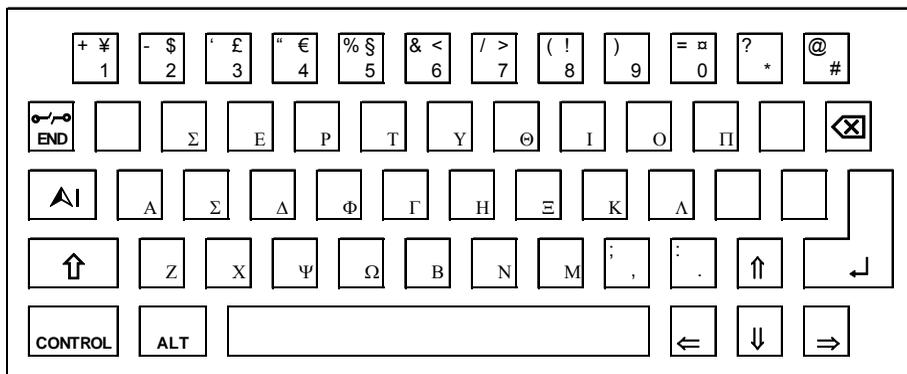


Fig. 88 AKB QWERTY

If an alpha keyboard (QWERTZ or QWERTY) is connected to a communication server that is set to Greek, the following keyboard assignment applies:



**Fig. 89** Greek keyboard assignment



**Note:**

The keyboard can be switched from Greek to Latin using "Alt Tab" subject to certain restrictions with regard to special characters. This means that Latin characters can be keyed in via the AKB even though the communication server language is set to Greek.

## 7.5.4 Function commands (macros)

Function commands are used mainly for automatically activating / deactivating features using the function keys of the system phones. The following function commands are available:

**Tab. 135** Function commands for system phones

Function command	Meaning
"A"	Seize line with maximum priority <sup>1)</sup>
"I"	Seize line
"X"	Disconnect
"P"	Pause 1 second before next action
"Lxx"	Seize line xx (line keys) <sup>1)</sup>
"N"	Enter call number keyed in during call preparation
"."	Control keys function
"Z"	Activate / deactivate DTMF mode (tone dialling)
"R"	Use call number last dialled
"Y"	End call and reseat line <sup>2)</sup>

<sup>1)</sup> Available only with the key telephones.

<sup>2)</sup> Not available for Office 10.

The function commands can be stored directly on the system phones or on the function keys via AMS.



**Note:**

As the Office 10 does not have a text mode, only 3 function commands can be stored on function keys on this phone. The 3 function commands are entered using the following keys:

**Tab. 136 Function commands on function keys Office 10**

	Pause 1 second before next action
	Control keys function
	Activate / deactivate DTMF mode (tone dialling)

## 7.6 Functions and terminals no longer supported

The Aastra 400 series continues to support the terminals and functions of the Aastra IntelliGate series. Exceptions include the following terminals and functions:

- Digital system phones Office 20, Office 30, Office 40
- IP system phones Office 35IP, Office 70IP-b
- Cordless system phones Office 100, Office 130/130pro, Office 150, Office 150EEEx, Office 155pro/155ATEX
- The Aastra 6751i phone is no longer supported as an Aastra SIP phone.
- IP system softphone Office 1600/1600IP
- DECT radio unit SB-4
- Pocket Adapter V.24
- LAN switch SM-LAN8
- X.25 in the D channel
- Ascotel® Mobility Interface (AMI) and DCT terminals
- Universal Terminal Interface (UTI)

## 7.7 Licensing information of third-party software products

### **The Vovida Software License, Version 1.0**

Copyright (c) 2000 Vovida Networks, Inc. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. The names "VOCAL", "Vovida Open Communication Application Library", and "Vovida Open Communication Application Library (VOCAL)" must not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without prior written permission. For written permission, please contact [vocal@vovida.org](mailto:vocal@vovida.org).
4. Products derived from this software may not be called "VOCAL", nor may "VOCAL" appear in their name, without prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL VOVIDA NETWORKS, INC. OR ITS CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DAMAGES IN EXCESS OF \$1,000, NOR FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

SPIRIT G3Fax is Copyright (c) 1995-2007

14.4 Modem and V.42 Software is Copyright (c) 1995-2008, SPIRIT

Echo Cancellation Software is Copyright (c) 1995-2008, SPIRIT

**York Technologies Limited**

Copyright and License Information

You agree that all ownership and copyright of licensed icons remain the property of York Technologies Limited. You will be granted a non-exclusive license to display the graphical media royalty-free in any personal or commercial software applications, web design, presentations, and multimedia projects that you create and/or distribute. You may modify the icons and display the resulting derived artwork subject to the terms of this agreement. Where an application is to be distributed, the graphical media must be compiled into the application binary file or its associated data files, documentation files, or components. If you are creating software applications or websites on behalf of a client they must either purchase an additional license for the icons from York Technologies Limited or you may surrender and fully transfer your license to your client and notify us that you have done so. Except where stated above you may not license, sub-license, grant any rights, or otherwise make available for use the icons either in their original or modified state to any other party. You may not include the icons in any form of electronic template that allows other parties to distribute multiple copies of customised applications. You may not include the icons in form of obscene, pornographic, defamatory, immoral or illegal material.

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW ICONS AND OTHER GRAPHICAL MEDIA ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. THE ENTIRE RISK ARISING OUT OF USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE ICONS AND OTHER GRAPHICAL MEDIA REMAINS WITH YOU.

IN NO EVENT WILL YORK TECHNOLOGIES LIMITED BE LIABLE FOR ANY DAMAGES, INCLUDING LOSS OF DATA, LOST OPPORTUNITY OR PROFITS, COST OF COVER, OR ANY SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, DIRECT, OR INDIRECT DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR RELATING TO THE USE OF THE ICONS AND OTHER GRAPHICAL MEDIA, HOWEVER CAUSED ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY. THIS LIMITATION WILL APPLY EVEN YORK TECHNOLOGIES LIMITED HAS BEEN ADVISED OR GIVEN NOTICE OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE. IN ANY CASE, YORK TECHNOLOGIES LIMITED'S ENTIRE LIABILITY UNDER ANY PROVISION OF THIS AGREEMENT SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE GREATER OF THE LICENSE/PURCHASE FEE PAID BY YOU FOR THE ICONS OR £1.00. NOTHING IN THESE TERMS AND CONDITIONS SHALL EXCLUDE OR LIMIT YORK TECHNOLOGIES LIMITED'S LIABILITY FOR DEATH OR PERSONAL INJURY CAUSED BY ITS NEGLIGENCE OR FRAUD OR ANY OTHER LIABILITY WHICH CANNOT BE EXCLUDED OR LIMITED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW.

This Agreement shall be subject to and construed and interpreted in accordance with English Law and shall be subject to the jurisdiction of the Courts of England. Any enquiries regarding this Agreement should be directed to York Technologies Limited, St Mary's Cottage, St Buryan, Penzance, UK, TR19 6DJ.

20 August 2007

Glyph Lab is a trading name of York Technologies Limited registered in England and Wales, No 3846468. Registered office St Marys Cottage, St Buryan, Penzance TR19 6DJ, UK. Glyph Lab is a trademark of York Technologies Limited

## 7.8 Documents and online help systems with further information

Product	Document
Products of the Aastra 400 family	System Manual for Aastra 470 System Manual for System Functions and Features System Manual for SIP and SIP terminals SIP Access User's Guide (English) User's Guide for function codes on Aastra 400 Application Notes, technical information, FAQs and compatibility lists are all available on the internet/extranet support page at: <a href="https://pbxweb.aastra.com">https://pbxweb.aastra.com</a>
AMS	Readme file Information Manager Online help Tooltips Application Notes
WebAdmin	Online help Configuration assistant
Upload Manager	Online help
System Event Manager	Online help
Project planning application Aastra Plan	Online help
DECT	Planning DECT systems User's Guide
SIP-DECT	User's Guide for SIP-DECT on Aastra 400
Basic/Enterprise voice mail system	User's Guide for voice-mail system on Aastra 400 System Manual for System Functions and Features
OIP	What's New System Manual for Open Interfaces Platform Online help OfficeSuite User's Guide User's Guide for First Party TAPI Service Provider
Networking	System Manual for Aastra Intelligent Net (AIN) and IP system phones System Manual for PISN/QSIG Networking
IP system phones	Quick User's Guide Aastra 5360ip / Aastra 5361ip / Aastra 5370ip / Aastra 5380ip Operating Instructions for Aastra 5360ip / Aastra 5361ip / Aastra 5370ip / Aastra 5380ip / Aastra 2380ip
Digital system phones	Quick User's Guides for Office 10 / Office 25 / Office 35 / Office 45/ 45pro / Office 135/135pro / Office 160pro/Safeguard/ATEX / Aastra 5360 / Aastra 5361 / Aastra 5370 / Aastra 5380 / Aastra 610d / Aastra 620d / Aastra 630d

Product	Document
	User's guides for Office 10 / Office 25 / Office 35 / Office 45/45pro / Office 135/135pro / Office 160pro/Safeguard/ATEX / Aastra 5360 / Aastra 5361/ Aastra 5370/ Aastra 5380 / Aastra 5380 / Aastra 610d / Aastra 620d / Aastra 630d Office 45 System Assistant Operating Instructions
PC operator console	Aastra 1560/1560ip User's Guide Office 1560/1560IP Quick User's Guide Online help
Mobile phones	User's Guide for mobile phones on Aastra 400 Aastra Mobile Client User's Guide

The documents can be accessed at <http://www.aastra.com/docfinder>.

Further documents in the Internet:

- Environmental information for communication server and system phones
- Declarations of conformity for communication server and system phones
- Labels for system phones and expansion key modules
- Safety instructions for system phones
- Application Notes
- Product information
- Leaflets
- Brochures
- Data sheets

# Index

## A

Aastra 1910, Aastra 1930	23
Aastra 5300	19
Aastra 5360	133
Aastra 5361	133
Aastra 5370	133
Aastra 5380	133
Aastra 6730i	22
Aastra 6750i	22
Aastra applications (overview)	24
Aastra Blustar 8000i	21
Aastra phones and clients (overview)	19
About this document	12
Access log	155
Access types	148
AD2 terminal interface	132
Administration rights	150
Allocatable functions	39
Alpha keyboard (AKB)	244
Alpha keyboard for Aastra 5380/5380ip	243
Ambient conditions	234
AMS	144
Auxiliary applications	146
Manager	145
Shell	144
Upload Manager	172
Application interfaces	26
Audio interface	128
Authorization profile	149
Auxiliary applications	146

## B

Backup	159
Basic rate interface BRI-T	96
Basic system	34
Basic Systems	
DSP Resources	36
Selectable DSP functions	37
Boot Mode	198
Bus	
DSI	106
S	113

## C

Cable screening	84
Carrying out functions	190
Charging bay	223
Component mounting rules	90
Configuration	144
Configuration data	171
Connecting the System	
indirectly	91
via main distribution board	92
Connection possibilities (overview)	32
Control elements	34
Control inputs	126
Control outputs	126
CTI - Computer Telephony Integration	29
CTRL key	190

## D

Data exchange	158
Data export	163
Data import	163
Data Maintenance	168
Data memory	168
DECT	176
error	222
Default password	152
Default user account	149
Design of cards and modules	235
Designation sticker	230
Dial-up connection to the AIN	195
Dimensions and weights	237
Dimensions of cards and modules	235
Direct connection	83, 91
Display and control panel	188
Display elements	34
Display priorities	191
Door intercom system	123
Download	161
DSI	
Power available	108, 109
Terminal interfaces	105
DSI power available	108, 109
DSP	36
DSP modules	38

Replacing .....	183
SM-DSP1 .....	38
SM-DSP2 .....	38
SM-DSPX1 .....	38
SM-DSPX2 .....	38
DSP Resources .....	36
DSP-Bausteine .....	39

## E

Earthing .....	82
Electrical data .....	234
Electrical isolation .....	234
Emergency Upload .....	175
Equipment overview .....	231
Equipping .....	86
DSP module .....	89
Interface card .....	87
Jumper .....	89
Wiring Adapter .....	88
Error .....	199
Error display .....	219
Ethernet interface .....	129
ETSI .....	113, 116
EUL via LAN .....	198
Event message .....	201
Event table .....	208
Expansion possibilities (overview) .....	33

## F

Fault & Maintenance Manager (FM) .....	201
First-party CTI .....	29
Fixed DSP functions .....	36
FM .....	201
Function commands (macros) .....	245
Function, not supported .....	246
FXO network interfaces .....	103

## H

Hardware update .....	178
Heat dissipation .....	234

## I

Import .....	163
Indirect connection .....	83
Initialization .....	164, 196
Installation .....	69, 70
Cable cover .....	81
Desktop installation .....	77

Drilling plan .....	74
Drilling template .....	75
Equipment supplied .....	70
Fan .....	80
Location requirements .....	71
Minimum distances .....	72
Mounting options .....	70
Rack-mounting .....	77
Safety regulations .....	72
Wall mounting .....	72
Installation (overview) .....	16
Interface access .....	151
Interface cards .....	45
Options cards .....	48
Terminal cards .....	47
Trunk cards .....	46
Interfaces .....	34
Interfaces (overview) .....	32

## L

LED display .....	188
LED on the radio unit .....	220
Licences .....	54, 165, 179
Log data .....	155
Longclicks on cordless phones .....	224

## M

Maintenance .....	168, 226
Message and alarm systems .....	28
Mode .....	191
Modes of operation .....	191
Modules .....	231

## N

Networking possibilities (overview) .....	17
---	----

## O

Office 10 .....	138
Office 25 .....	135
Office 35 .....	135
Office 45 .....	226
Office 45/45pro .....	135
Open Interfaces Platform .....	26
Operating state display .....	219
Operation of system phones .....	241
Operations supervision .....	201
Options cards .....	48
ODAB .....	48

Overload code display .....	225
Overload shutdown .....	67
Overview	
Aastra applications .....	24
Aastra clients .....	19
Aastra phones .....	19
Aastra Plan .....	25
AMS .....	25
Communication systems .....	15
Connection Options .....	32
Expansion possibilities .....	33
Installation versions .....	16
Networking Possibilities .....	17
OIP .....	24
Positioning .....	17
SRM .....	25
System components .....	69
TWP .....	24
WebAdmin .....	25

## P

Password-free access .....	154, 194
Passwords .....	153
Patch cable .....	99, 131
PCB Designation .....	229
Pilot key .....	190
Port addressing .....	95
Positioning (overview) .....	17
Power requirements, terminals .....	67, 107
Power supply .....	36, 85, 237
Prebarring .....	179
Primary rate interface PRI .....	99
Private leased-line network .....	98
Product information .....	8
Product, not supported .....	246

## R

Rack-mounting set .....	71
Radio unit .....	140, 220
RAM test .....	192
Rating plate .....	230
Reading out default values .....	167
Remote access .....	155
Replacing system terminals .....	186
Replacing the EIM card .....	184
Replacing the interface card .....	181
Replacing the Mainboard .....	185
Resetting the IP address .....	197
Restart with database backup .....	194

Restart without database backup .....	190
Restore .....	160

## S

S bus .....	113
Safety icons .....	13
SB -4 .....	142
SB -8 .....	142
SEM .....	218
Shell .....	144
Signal destinations .....	209
Smart Software Update .....	146
Software	
Emergency Upload .....	175
Standard upload .....	172
update .....	171
Standard upload .....	172
Status display .....	219
Symbols .....	13
System Assistant Office 45 .....	154
System capacity .....	33, 50
System components (overview) .....	69
System Event Manager (SEM) .....	218
System limits	
interface-related .....	54
power supply-related .....	66
terminal-related .....	52
System modules .....	38
DSP modules .....	38
System overview .....	15
System Search .....	146
Systematic designation system .....	229

## T

Technical data .....	232, 238
Terminal cards .....	47
EAD4C .....	47
EAD4V .....	47
EADP4 .....	47
ESST-2 .....	47
ETAB4 .....	47
TIC-2TS .....	47
TIC-4TS .....	47
Terminal interfaces .....	105
BRI-S .....	112
DSI .....	105
FXS .....	116
Terminal selection digit (TSD) .....	132, 139
Terminal type .....	133

Third-party CTI .....	30
Trunk cards .....	46
EAAB2 .....	46
ESST-2 .....	46
TIC-1PRI .....	46
TIC-2AB .....	46
TIC-2TS .....	46
TIC-4AB .....	46
TIC-4TS .....	46
TWP .....	24

## U

UM .....	172
Uninterruptible power supply .....	86
Upload .....	161
Upload Manager (UM) .....	172
UPS-12V .....	237
User Access Control .....	149
User account .....	149
User information .....	8

## W

Wiring	
Network interfaces .....	96
Terminal interfaces .....	105
Wiring Adapter .....	49
WA-1PRI .....	49
WA-2W .....	49
WA-TS0 .....	49
WA-TS1 .....	49
Working offline .....	159
Working online .....	160